

雅思满分

流利口语


IETLS

全国各大城市热力巡回
历经雅思培训风起云涌

贾若寒 编著

- 实用、精准的应试技法
- 典型、全面的口语话题
- 词汇、语法、句型大全
- 语音、语调、文化梳理
- 十年雅思教学精华
- 英式培训文化集锦
- 提高口语沟通能力
- 打造雅思高分奇迹



 中国人民大学出版社



附赠MP3光盘

推 荐 序

——激情燃烧雅思 流利奠定辉煌

这是一本怎样的书

这是一本适合所有雅思考生的口语书。

假如你第一次了解雅思，那么你一定要从本书的第一页看起，连目录都不要错过。这本书的风格非常实用。书的第1章完整地讲述了雅思口语的所有考试细节。书的第2章清晰地解析了雅思口语应试策略。通过这本书，你可以领略到雅思实战口语派的不同凡响。

如果你曾经了解一些雅思，希望寻找强化阶段甚至冲刺阶段的辅导材料，那么这本书也是你不可多得的复习指南。书的第3、第4、第5章详细地分析了所有雅思口语典型话题，可以做到以点带面、举一反三。你不必担心没有外教辅导，书中提供了足够的素材库，你完全可以做到雅思口语答案DIY。你不必担心内容太多而无法完全掌握，每章结尾的黄金法则会再次提示你复习要点。如果你不能理解答案的精妙之处，你可以再次浏览第2章寻找答案。

如果你遇到新题、难题、怪题，无法开启思路，无法畅所欲言，那么你可以先看第2章的应试策略，再印证第1章的考试介绍，你也能从第3、第4、第5章中那些经典的答案里找到你所需要的信息。

总之，你可以反复研读，每一遍都会有提升。

为什么是“满分”

这是一本完全可以被称为“满分”的雅思口语书。因为书中对口语知识点的讲解、对备考策略的提炼精辟而独特、简洁而实用，完全可以帮助一位口语高手获得雅思口语满分。

这本书里面的答案可以被称为“满分”。书中的语言能够被考生迅速掌握，能够被考官广泛认可，从而达到分数和能力同步提高的目的。这也是实用口语教学的魅力所在。

这是一本可以帮助任何一位考生获得满意分数口语书。这本书有足够的实力能够解决你目前口语上的困扰。即使你复习时间紧张，也一定能够在考前有所收获。

怎样做到“流利”

雅思口语是一个沟通的过程，既是考生跟考官的沟通，也是中西文化的沟通。全书紧扣评分标准，并且挖掘了评分标准深层次的内涵：不管是语音、语调还是语法、词汇，不论是问答策略还是背景常识，全书都做了非常具有实效性的讲解，力图做到沟通无障碍，这是流利的第一步。

丰富的素材库，深刻的话题解析，灵活的应试策略，激发了每位读者畅所欲言的兴趣与潜力。当你有热情开口说雅思的时候，流利口语尽在脑海，也倘佯在舌尖。

贾若寒的流利口语

贾若寒老师是第一批专业从事雅思培训的教师之一，走遍全国所有有考点的城市，培训过数万考生，受到广泛好评。他有着丰富的雅思阅历和激情四射的培训热情。他的教学经验经得起时间的检验，适合不同地域的学生。

下面我们一起对着录音光盘边听边学！

吕雷

序 言

我从事雅思培训已经十年了。这十多年里，雅思培训有了很大发展。不管是考试本身，还是雅思培训行业的整体水平，都有了突飞猛进的提升。

雅思口语培训的第一步是鼓励学生开口。鼓励学生开口最好的方式就是用热情面对雅思口语，畅所欲言。所以我站在口语课的讲台上，都是以百分百的热情来开始每一堂课，通过课上的互动营造一种学英语的欢乐气氛，不管学生的英文程度如何、受教育背景如何，通过大胆使用英文建立自信。而营造这种欢乐气氛的基础之一就是口语话题的选择。口语话题有两类。一类是能鼓励学生开口的话题。这类话题是雅思口语初期所涵盖的话题。这类话题没有太多的文化障碍，不会涉及太多的偏、难词汇。第二类话题是变化型话题，这些话题是在雅思发展过程中诞生的。这类话题往往是第一类话题的变体，只要在第一类话题的基础上，运用技巧就能解决。对于这些话题，这本书已经做了非常全面的概括。所有的典型话题已经覆盖了雅思口语完整的范围。可是，这也只是第一步。

在开口说的过程中，学生的英文会有很多的语法错误，甚至有的时候发音不是很标准而且带有地方口音，这就涉及了第二步培训。

雅思口语的第二步是基本知识的培训，包括词、句、语音、语法等等。但是在口语中，强调的不是这些基本知识的数量，而是质量。每位学生的基础有差异，词汇、句型和语法一定要做到准确使用，语音要不产生歧义。考官多数是宽容的，他知道“非母语”的概念，所以一般不会特别苛求。毕竟雅思口语考查的主要是沟通能力。当然如果学生的英语基础非常扎实，经过一段时间的提高，就会说出令考官赞叹的英语。对于词、句、语音和语法知识，这本书里面总结得非常精要，基本上可以满足雅思口语的需求。但是这还只是高分的一部分。因为我们还需要技巧，特别是沟通技巧。

雅思口语培训的第三步是沟通技巧的培训。这是帮助学生充分展示文化水平的一种训练。除了话题之外，在每个话题下跟考官的问答是考场上沟通的主要方式。在编写这本书的过程中，我把能搜集到的提问全部搜集齐全，所有的答案均经过考官认证。考生在读答案的时候要充分领会文字上的沟通技巧。哪些需要详细回答，哪些可以忽略，哪些是考官容易理解的，哪些是忌讳的，哪些是容易产生误会的。整个问答过程如同去外企面试，能在雅思口语中取得高分的考生到国外工作和生活相当自如。无论是话题中给出的标准答案还是素材库里面丰富的观点和态度，都可供考生参考。

最后需要告诉考生的是，考雅思只是英语培训的一个过程，而英语培训也只是人生发展的一个环节。在整个培训过程中语言培训和沟通技巧只是部分工作，建立阳光的心态和用于克服困难的勇气会让每位学生受益终身。

在我过去十年的教学过程中，我也到各地去做雅思讲座，几乎跑遍了全国各省。在这些地方做讲座的时候，我也传递给学生一个理念：**雅思口语考试的成功离不开三样东西：科学的应试技巧、扎实的语言功力以及热情自信的应试心态！**愿每位考生考试成功！

在本书编写过程中，吕蕾、张靖娴、江源、贾继峰、孙英莺、孙凯、贾玉梅、周晓辉、杨志、史飒、秦通、贾明、王朝晖、赵敏、江南、王晨萌、秦春娥、李彩婷、蒋庆华、王贞也参与了资料收集及部分编写工作，在此一并感谢。

贾继峰

目 录

第1章 雅思口语考试抢分秘籍 /1

- 第1节 雅思口语全接触 /4
- 第2节 雅思口语考官的主观评分 /8
- 第3节 雅思口语考试Part 1得分要诀 /11
- 第4节 雅思口语考试Part 2得分要诀 /13
- 第5节 雅思口语考试Part 3得分要诀 /15
- 第6节 雅思口语模板与套句的学习与使用 /17

第2章 雅思口语考试四大杀手锏 /19

- 第1节 发音杀手锏——像一个英国人或美国人在说话 /21
- 第2节 流利程度和连贯性杀手锏 /28
- 第3节 词汇杀手锏——适合的词汇就是最好的词汇 /35
- 第4节 语法杀手锏——低级错误要避免 /41

第3章 雅思口语考试Part 1全解析 /45

- 第1节 Part 1个人信息类口语考题真题荟萃 /47
- 第2节 Part 1媒体交流类口语考题真题荟萃 /57
- 第3节 Part 1日常生活类口语考题真题荟萃 /69
- 第4节 Part 1休闲爱好类口语考题真题荟萃 /83
- 第5节 Part 1旅游交通类口语考题真题荟萃 /100
- 第6节 雅思口语考试Part 1八大黄金原则 /105

第4章 雅思口语考试Part 2全解析 /107

- 第1节 Describing People人物描述类 /109
- 第2节 Describing Places地点描述类 /120
- 第3节 Describing Objects物体描述类 /126
- 第4节 Describing Events事件描述类 /131
- 第5节 Describing Personal Interests个人兴趣描述类 /136
- 第6节 Describing Other Things其他描述类 /146
- 第7节 雅思口语考试Part 2考题大全 /152
- 第8节 雅思口语考试Part 2八大黄金原则 /158

第5章 雅思口语考试Part 3全攻略 /159

- 第1节 雅思口语考试Part 3经典必备句型 /161
- 第2节 雅思口语考试Part 3经典思路汇总 /176
- 第3节 雅思口语考试Part 3和雅思写作通用素材库 /202
- 第4节 雅思口语考试Part 3八大黄金原则 /222

第 1 章

雅思口语考试

秘籍



IELTS Speaking Analysis

IELTS Speaking Part 1
Topic: Education

Part	Nature of interaction	Timing
Part 1: Introduction and interview	Examiner introduces himself/herself and confirms candidate's identity. Examiner interviews candidate using verbal questions selected from familiar topic frames.	4~5 minutes
Part 2: Individual long turn	Examiner asks candidate to speak for 1~2 minutes on a particular topic based on written input in the form of a candidate task card and content-focused prompts. Examiner asks one or two questions to round off the long turn.	3~4 minutes (incl. 1 minute preparation time)
Part 3: Two-way discussion	Examiner invites candidate to participate in discussion of a more abstract nature, based on verbal questions thematically linked to Part 2 topic.	4~5 minutes

雅思口语考试是目前世界上英语口语考试中最为人性化的一种测试类型。

在雅思口语考试中，考生和考官面对面坐着进行测试，相互间距离不到80厘米，而且考官在桌上放着录音笔。

当考试正式开始的时候，考官就会开启录音笔录音，以确保考试的公正性。

如果考生对考试结果不满意，可以要求重新评分，那么这个时候剑桥雅思考试委员会就会重听该考生的考试现场录音，并且重新评分。

因此，雅思口语考试的重点就是如何在11~14分钟的雅思口语考试时间内听懂考官的问题，完全发挥考生的英语口语水平并且有逻辑有条理地回答每一个问题。

先让我们来完整了解一下雅思口语考试的形式和特点。

部分	互动本质	时间
第一部分： 介绍和问答	考官自我介绍，并确认考生身份。考官从模版中选择相关的熟悉话题口头测试学生。	4~5分钟
第二部分： 个人长时间回答	考官要求考生对一个特定话题说1~2分钟，这个特定话题是基于考生答题卡上的相关提示信息，并且考生要根据提示卡上的内容来回答。考官在话题结束时问1~2个问题来收尾。	3~4分钟 (包括1分钟的 准备时间)
第三部分： 双向讨论	考官邀请考生参与讨论一些更加抽象的问题，这些问题的主题跟第二部分相关。	4~5分钟

第1节 雅思口语全接触

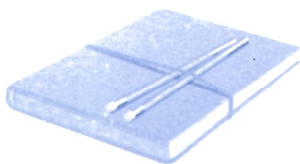
雅思口语考试是在笔试（听力、阅读和写作）之后的下午或者第二天进行，相对于笔试近三个小时的高强度测试而言，口语部分是非常“轻松”的。“轻松”是指考生不需要进行复杂的逻辑思考和推断，但口语考试的大部分时候需要instant response，也就是迅速回答考官的问题。因此考生的快速反应能力是影响雅思口语考试分数高低的关键因素。因为大多数考生的英语水平差异不大，口语考试当中的心理紧张程度和反应能力会使得考生原本接近的分数在最后的实际考试结果中出现较大的差异。

对雅思口语的了解要从了解考试形式开始。我们首先通过雅思官方提供的表格（参见P2）来看一下雅思口语考试的板块。

但是在真正的考试中，往往是第三部分的抽象问题会在第一部分就被问到，究其原因，我认为主要有以下两个：

原因 A

雅思口语考生习惯于去背一些模板和答案，以应付第一部分的雅思口语常规问题，而雅思口语考官在一段时间的测试中发现很多考生的答案相似或者考生在回答问题的过程当中有背诵答案的迹象，这个时候考官会抽取第三部分的抽象深入的问题放到第一部分来，以辨别考生是否在第一部分有作弊的嫌疑。而剑桥雅思考试委员会对在雅思口语考官的培训当中采取了方法来识别考生是否背诵口语题目的答案，其中之一就是考官会把市面上的口语教材拿过来翻阅，以熟悉一些中国考生常用的模板和套句。因此雅思口语考生一定要根据自己的情况来准备一些内容，但是要注意不能背诵，也不能套用一些用烂的套句。



那么什么是用烂的套句呢？

用烂的套句分为以下三种：

第一种被称为“没头脑套句”。

比如说“It's hard to say, let me think”, “Maybe, I think...”

第二种被称为“敷衍式套句”。

只要碰到考官问问题就会说：“It's a good question. Many people would have different opinions about it. As to me, I think...”这个句子本来不是烂句或者套句，就是因为说的人太多，或者在一次考试里面说很多次，那么考官就觉得考生是专门准备过了。

第三种被称为“参考书套句”。

现在市面上是有一些热门雅思参考书，考生会整段整段去背里面的内容，比如Describe a person who is good at sports，大多数人都会说姚明，而且内容都差不多，很多

考生连用词和句型都非常相似，这就导致考官怀疑考生是专门背过答案的。

因此考生要形成比较个性化的内容，在句型的选择上也不能照搬照套。（具体的模板和套句的学习和运用请见本章第6节）

原因 B

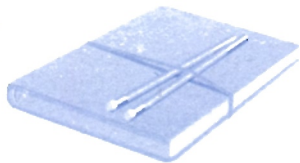
雅思口语考生一开始就说到比较深入的内容，考官鉴于沟通的本质，会根据考生的答案继续往下问。

比如说考官问：What is your favorite transport means?

考生回答：My favorite one is subway because it is convenient and cheap to take. But it is too crowded in the rush hours and I think the government should do something to solve this problem.

这个时候，考官会就“the government should do something to solve this problem”继续发问：Would you tell me what the government could do to solve the problem of traffic congestions and overcrowding during the rush hours?

因此如果考生不想在第一部分碰到比较难的和刁钻的问题，就要表现得非常自然，在内容上不要太深入。对于那些想要冲击8分甚至9分的考生来说，情况就不一样了。特别是对于那些想要冲击满分的考生来说，在一开始就要表现得非常好，在内容表现上就要体现出思维的逻辑性和语言的流畅性。



雅思口语考试的第二部分其实是三个部分中最为重要的一个部分。这个部分的成败决定整个雅思口语考试的成败。我在教学过程中为几千名学生做过雅思口语测试，发现很多考生在Part 2规定的1~2分钟的测试时间内甚至连1分钟都说不满，有的甚至40秒左右就完成Part 2了。在雅思口语考试中，考官是会看秒表计时的，如果考生只说了40秒，考官会让考生keep going或者keep talking，这个时候考生会更紧张，更说不出话，这样也就导致了整个考试的失败，我这里所说的失败就是指最后的雅思口语分数最多也就得5分。

我在跟雅思口语考官的交流过程中发现，大部分的雅思口语考官的评分标准是根据考生三个部分的综合水平来评分的，而不是Part 1和Part 2发挥得好，Part 3就不重要了。Part 3是雅思口语考试中最难的一个部分，也是最容易发挥的一个部分。这个部分尽管问题比较深入，需要考生具备一定的背景知识才能回答，但是考生经过了Part 1和Part 2的考验，口语测试的状态应该是最高的，因此，针对Part 3的问题，考生只要围绕话题天马行空地跟考官侃就行了。由于口语Part 3的问题和写作Task 2的问题极为相似，因此考生可以把口语和写作同时进行分类话题准备，同时积累话题素材和语言素材。考生要把口语第三部分当作写作口语化的内容，这样一来在考试中就可以轻松应付了。

从官方提供的雅思口语考试板块的构建可以看出，Part 1和Part 3都是4~5分钟，这

也就意味着考官的问题数量是根据考生回答内容的多少来决定的。如果考生在第一部分和第三部分的问答环节都是用一两句话来回答问题，那么考官的问题累加起来会有几十个，这对于一些基础不好、考试的时候又紧张的考生来说绝对是“杯具”甚至是“餐具”！因此考生一定要对每个问题给予充分回答，以减少考官问题的数量，把主动权掌握在自己手里。

除了考试形式之外，雅思口语考试的评分标准也是大家要吃透和完全掌握的。同样地，大家还是来关注剑桥雅思官方给出的以下四个标准：

Marking and Assessment

评分标准



IELTS examiners all hold relevant teaching qualifications and are recruited as examiners by the test centres and approved by the British Council or IDP: IELTS Australia. Detailed performance descriptors have been developed which describe spoken performance at the nine IELTS bands, based on the following criteria.

雅思口语考官都具备相关的教学资质，并且考官由雅思考试中心招聘并且经过英领馆文化教育处或IDP: IELTS Australia的核准认可。具体的考生成绩特征描述用9分来衡量，这些特征基于以下的标准：

☐ Fluency and Coherence refers to the ability to talk with normal levels of continuity, rate and effort and to link ideas and language together to form coherent, connected speech. The key indicators of fluency are speech rate and speech continuity. The key indicators of coherence are logical sequencing of sentences; clear marking of stages in a discussion, narration or argument; and the use of cohesive devices (e.g. connectors, pronouns and conjunctions) within and between sentences.

流利和一致指通过普通程度的连贯性、语速和语流来组织思路和语言，从而形成具备连贯性的语言。流利程度的主要特征是语言速度和语言连续性。一致性的主要特征是句子的逻辑顺序；讨论、叙述或者辩论中清晰的逻辑分段；以及在句子内部和句子之间连接工具的使用（包括连接词、代词和连词）。

☐ Lexical Resource refers to the range of vocabulary the candidate can use and the precision with which meanings and attitudes can be expressed. The key indicators are the variety of words used, the adequacy and appropriacy of the words used and the ability to circumlocute (get round a vocabulary gap by using other words) with or without noticeable hesitation.

词汇资源指考生运用词汇的广度，并且能够准确表达词汇的含义和态度。主要特征

包括词汇的多样性、恰当性和适用性，而且有能力运用婉转表达（即通过其他词汇来解释某个不熟悉的词）。同义转换词汇的表达上有可能有明显停顿。

☐ Grammatical Range and Accuracy refers to the range and the accurate and appropriate use of the candidate's grammatical resource. The key indicators of grammatical range are the length and complexity of the spoken sentences, the appropriate use of subordinate clauses, and the range of sentence structures, especially to move elements around for information focus. The key indicators of grammatical accuracy are the number of grammatical errors in a given amount of speech and the communicative effect of error.

语法多样性和准确性指考生语法资源运用的广泛程度和对语法的精确恰当的使用。语法多样性包括口语表达句子的长度和复杂程度，从句的恰当使用和句子结构的多样性，特别是指围绕核心信息产生多变的句式。语法准确性的主要特征是在特定说话时间中语法错误的数量以及这些错误对于交流的影响。

☐ Pronunciation refers to the ability to produce comprehensible speech to fulfil the speaking test requirements. The key indicators will be the amount of strain caused to the listener, the amount of speech which is unintelligible and the noticeability of L1 influence.

发音是指说出易于理解的话来完成口语考试要求的能力。主要特征包括发音对于考官造成理解困难的程度以及母语影响的程度。

从实际考试过程来看，大多数基础较差的考生在口语考试过程中根本无法确定自己的口语表现是否满足以上这些标准，因为雅思口语考试的紧张程度以及问题的逐渐加深让考生根本无法估计自己的词汇多好，语法是不是准确或者发音是不是标准。在考试中唯一要注意的就是流利和连贯，只要做到流利和连贯，在考试的11~14分钟的过程里面没有冷场现象，一直在说话，那么该考生的雅思口语分数绝对不会低于6分，即使这个考生的语法和词汇有较多的错误！如果考生能减少词汇和语法错误，同时又能保证流利，7分以上也是非常正常的！（本书有专门章节讨论四大评分标准）

第2节 雅思口语考官的主观评分

雅思口语考官是雅思口语备考过程中不得不说的一个部分。相信有过雅思口语考试经历的考生会觉得自己的口语说得不错，考试当中感觉也不错，跟考官很谈得来，甚至相谈甚欢，但是成绩出来之后却令人大跌眼镜。很多考生认为雅思口语考试的准备只要自己做好，不需要考虑其他因素。其实了解雅思口语考官对于分数高低的主观标准也会产生一定的影响。

雅思口语考官来自很多地方，除了主流的英国、美国、澳大利亚和加拿大之外，还有印度、巴基斯坦、新加坡、南非的考官。当然，还有一些法国裔、俄罗斯裔和瑞典裔的考官。由于考官的语速、语音和语调有很大的差别，考生在考试的时候，仔细听并且听懂考官的问题显得尤其重要。

我在跟雅思口语考官的沟通中也了解到，第一印象是非常非常重要的，有时甚至是起决定性作用的。给大家一个很简单的例子：当考官出来喊考生考号然后考生进入口语考场的时候，考官会说，“Put your bag over there and show me your candidate card and your ID card”，如果这个时候考生由于紧张而茫然不知所措，完全没有听懂考官说的话，有些考官就会觉得考生的英文综合水平比较低，考官心里就会认为考生的雅思口语分数也就在5分左右了。这样一来，本来考生有6.5分的水平，但是由于不了解雅思口语考试中给考官留下好的第一印象的重要性，口语分数也就被打了折扣。

还有一个重要点，就是在口语考试中从见到雅思口语考官一直到口语考试结束，考官把你送出门为止，要记住整个过程都是在进行口语考试！很多考生发现考官非常喜欢跟他聊，而且不时地表现出愉快的表情，就想当然地认为考官很欣赏他的英文表达，也就无所顾忌起来。其实考生这样反而跌入了考官的圈套之中，因为考官是要看考生真正的英语水平的。考生一旦认为考官欣赏他的英文，也就会不假思索地任意回答，逻辑和语言两方面都不注意，所有的弱点也就暴露出来了。因此，考生要把整个雅思口语测试过程都当作考试来完成，避免犯一些低级的语言错误，比如he和she不分的毛病，这也是大多数中国考生常犯的错误。

那么考官究竟是怎样来评分的呢？看看以下这个考官评分的依据：

得分	流利度与连贯性	词汇资源	语法结构的准确性	发音
9	发言时极少有重复或自我更正, 偶尔的停顿也是由于在思考内容, 而非搜寻合适的词汇和语法; 发言连贯, 语言中上下文流畅, 联系自然而充分; 全面而得体地围绕话题展开发言	面对任何话题都能灵活、准确地使用词汇; 自然、准确地使用习语	自然、准确地使用多样语法结构; 语法结构的使用自始至终保持准确, 虽然偶尔犯一些英语为母语者也会犯的“口误”	灵活运用精确的语言交谈, 很容易理解所表达的含义
8	发言时很少有重复或自我更正, 偶尔的停顿也多是由于在思考内容, 极少情况下是为了搜寻合适的语言; 连贯而得体地围绕话题展开发言	能自然、灵活地使用多样词汇来准确表达思想, 尽管偶尔有不准确; 能按要求有效使用同一语言的其他表达方式	灵活使用多种结构; 大部分语句无误, 极少数情况下出现错误, 或个别简单错误	易于理解, 母语语音对英语的影响极小; 使用多种语音手段来有效达意
7	能充分展开, 且不会有刻意思考的痕迹, 没有语言上的不连贯; 能较灵活地使用连接词或语言中的信号词; 有时出现由于语言水平而带来的重复或自我更正	能灵活使用词汇来讨论多种话题; 对语体和搭配有所了解, 尽管有时不准确; 能有效使用同一语言的其他表达方式	较灵活地使用多种复杂结构; 多数语句无误, 但有些错误一直存在	发音自然, 偶尔出现发音错误, 考官已经开始享受与考生交谈的过程
6	有充分交流的意识, 但有时由于重复、自我更正或停顿而导致说话不连贯; 能使用连接词或语言中的信号词, 尽管有时不准确	有足够的词汇来充分讨论话题, 清晰达意, 尽管有不准确; 大致可使用同一语言的其他表达方式	能使用简单和复杂结构, 但缺乏灵活性; 复杂结构经常出现错误, 尽管这些错误很少导致交流障碍	自始至终可以被理解, 尽管发音错误偶尔有一点费解
5	通常能维持语流, 但需要通过重复、自我更正或放慢语速才能实现流畅; 能流畅表达简单语言, 复杂语言会导致语言不畅	能讨论相关话题, 但词汇使用缺乏灵活性; 尝试使用同一语言的其他表达方式, 但未都能成功	能使用基本的句子结构, 且使用基本正确; 复杂结构的使用有限, 且通常包含错误, 有时导致交流障碍	可听懂所说的内容, 个别地方需要仔细分辨才能听懂

4	回答时有明显停顿，语速可能较慢，时常有重复、自我更正；能把基本句连接起来，但重复使用某些简单连接词，语意上多有不连贯之处	词汇的选择上时常犯错；很少尝试使用同一语言的其他表达方式	能使用基本的句子结构；错误频繁，可能导致误解	可以发出某些语音，但总体较差，给听者带来严重理解困难
3	发言时停顿过长；连接简单句的能力有限；只给简单答复，时常难以表达基本想法	使用简单语言表达个人信息；词汇匮乏	明显背诵事先准备的语言；句子表达中错误很多（背过的表达除外）	能发出某些语音，语言经常无法识别
2	说大多数词前都要长时间地思考停顿；最简单基本的交流	只能说只言片语或事先背过的语言	不能使用基本的句子形式	语言经常无法识别
1	无法交流，语言无法评估			
0	缺席考试			

这里要告诉大家一个小秘密：

中国考生的雅思口语平均分常年稳定在5.1~5.2分（世界排名末尾）。

这也会对雅思口语考官的评分产生一定的心理影响。

考官一般不会很大方地出手给很高的分数。

因此，考生所要做的是从复习备考一开始就要有信心朝评分标准中的7~9分的指标努力！6分的标准其实是非常基本的。

我们从现在开始按照这些标准严格要求自己吧！Bingo！

第3节 雅思口语考试Part 1得分要诀

Part 1是雅思口语考试的第一部分。在雅思口语考试开始的时候，有很多应该引起考生重视的细节和技巧。

考官迎接考生入场是考生要注意的小细节。在这个过程中，考生要十分注意礼貌，如果不注意这一点分数将会受到影响，另外一点是在神情和举止上要表现出十足的自信！要有不卑不亢的感觉！另外一个语言表达之外的注意点就是eye contact。眼神自然地交流说明了考生对于考试做好了充分的准备，对于那些口语考试碰到老外容易紧张的考生来说也可以通过眼神交流适当地调节心情，缓解情绪。另外，在眼神交流的同时向考官微笑也能够有助于提升考官对考生的印象。

Part 1的正式开始就是从考官的自我介绍开始的。考官会报上自己的姓名并且检查考生的身份证明。这个时候考官会告知考生考试过程将全程录音。因此考生之前对这个环节要有心理准备，不要突然紧张起来。接下来考官会询问考生的姓名以核对考生准考证上的信息，这个时候Part 1的问题还没有正式开始，所以考生在说自己姓名的时候语速要慢一些，口齿一定要清楚！

在询问完姓名、核对好考生基本信息之后，Part 1就正式开始了。这个时候雅思口语考试的常规问题就开始出现了。从雅思口语考试的规律来看，Part 1的所有问题按照话题类别归类大致有20~30个。这些话题包括：

1. Your Work or Your Studies 工作或者学习	16. Shopping 购物
2. Your Home (Your Accommodation) 住房（住宿）	17. Clothes 衣服
3. Your Hometown 家乡	18. Time 时间
4. Neighbours 邻居	19. Art 艺术
5. Computers 电脑	20. Leisure Time 休闲时间
6. The Internet 网络	21. Weekends 周末
7. Travelling 旅游	22. Sport (and Exercise) 体育运动
8. Magazines and Newspapers 杂志和报纸	23. Television 电视
9. Advertisements 广告	24. Cooking 烹饪
10. Fruits and Vegetables 水果和蔬菜	25. Reading 阅读
11. Films 电影	26. Friends 朋友
12. Transportation 交通	27. Sounds (Noises) 声音（噪声）
13. Writing 写作	28. Daily Routine 日常工作
14. Flowers 花	29. Collecting 收藏
15. Weather 天气	30. Languages 语言

可以这样说，考生在雅思口语考试中可以100%遇见以上话题中的几个甚至十几个。这些话题是可以经过准备的，但是有一点要注意，考生绝对不可以把答案写下来和背出来，任何背诵的痕迹考官一眼就看出来了。因此，雅思口语考试Part 1的题目是可以准备的，但是绝对不能背诵。

Part 1的题目在准备的时候是从思路上着手去准备，也就是说形成一套适合自己的答案模式和答题思路，而不是去照搬照抄雅思参考书上的答案然后背下来。（具体的Part 1的语言分析和思路总结将在第三章详细讨论。）

雅思口语考试第一部分的另外一个得分要诀就是内容上尽量丰富。按照雅思官方的说法，第一部分是简单的生活类问题，答题时只要简略回答即可。但是不要忘记，如果考生回答得简略，那么考官所提问的话题类别就将会增加，每个话题里面的小问题也会增多，对于一些语言能力不强或者思路组织不善的考生来讲将是致命打击。因此，建议考生尽量回答得多一些。

比如考官问这个问题：

Do you think spare time is important to you? 休闲时间对你来说重要吗？

考生的回答是：

Yes, recreation is as necessary to us as study or work. We cannot work all day long without recreation. The mind and body require change to make us acute and vigorous. And recreation can relieve us of the fatigue from our study or work, and make us cheerful. For example, people who sit too much in their offices should take a kind of recreation that will supply their muscles with exercise.

首先这个考生直接回答考官的问题，然后说明原因。在说明原因的时候细节一定要丰富，比如“*We cannot work all day long without recreation（我们不能整天工作而不去放松一下）*”，“*The mind and body require change to make us acute and vigorous（身心都需要一些变化从而使我们保持敏锐和活力）*”，“*And recreation can relieve us of the fatigue from our study or work, and make us cheerful（休闲娱乐让我们从疲劳的工作和学习中解脱出来并且使我们感觉很兴奋）*”。而且考生在后面还通过例子说明问题，“*For example, people who sit too much in their offices should take a kind of recreation that will supply their muscles with exercise*”。（比如说，对那些成天待在办公室工作的人来说应该做一些活动来放松他们的筋骨）”。

说得多、内容丰富是Part 1取胜的关键。

记得有一次和澳大利亚Monash大学的雅思口语考官Raymond聊天，谈起如何训练学生keep talking的能力，Raymond告诉我这样一个词组：“**TALKING RUBBISH!**”

这里的“*Talking Rubbish*”就是指围绕一个话题想说什么就说什么，只要不跑题就行。这个原则同样也适用于雅思口语考试Part 3的问题。一个考生，只要有足够的发散性思维，他就能做到“*Talking Rubbish*”，能做到“*Talking Rubbish*”的考生也就进入高分行列了。

第4节 雅思口语考试Part 2得分要诀

雅思口语考试的第二部分Part 2要发挥好必须注意以下几个要点:

1. 充分利用一分钟的准备时间。考生在一分钟的准备时间里要尽量多地写下关键词。因为大多数考生在口语考试第二部分经常会由于紧张而突然没有思路,在60秒之内写下8~10个关键词有助于考生在答题过程中理清思路。

2. 完全回答答题卡上的四个问题,说满两分钟的答题时间。考官看一个考生的思路主要是看这个考生能否遵照考试指令完成问题,并且有条理、有逻辑地回答完这些问题。

大家来看一个考生应考Part 2的时候所做的笔记就可以看出他是如何做出完美的笔记并且完整回答4个指令问题的。

雅思口语考试真题

Describe your favorite gift.

You should say:

What the gift was.

When and where you got it.

What it was like.

And explain why it was your favorite gift.

考生笔记

Gift	purse
When/ where	last month, birthday
What it was like	color – grey material – fine, soft leather brand – Gucci pockets on outside deep pocket inside
Feeling	amazed, excited
Why favorite	needed a new purse, so beautiful

如果所有考生都能够做笔记做到以上表格中的程度,那么两分钟的答题时间完全可以撑满,甚至会超过。因此,雅思口语考试第二部分的高分与否是取决于考生回答的内容的!

3. 跟Part 1一样, Part 2也是有固定的话题题库的, 但是第二部分的话题总量达到180个之多! 考生不可能把这些话题都一一准备, 所以我把口语考试Part 2的话题归为以下五类:

Describing People (描述人物)

Describing Places (描述地点)

Describing Objects (描述具体物件)

Describing Events & Moments (描述事件)

Describing Activities (描述活动)

每个类别分别准备三到四个相关主题就足以应付雅思口语考试Part 2的所有话题了。

比如说描述人物的话题中, 以下这些就可以同时准备, 甚至可以说同一个人!

A Person Who Has Visited Your Home 一个来过你家做客的人

A Person Who Is Good at His/Her Job 一个工作得心应手的人

A Person Who Likes to Help Others 一个喜欢帮助他人的人

A Person Who Took Care of You in Your Childhood 一个在你儿时照顾过你的人

A Person You Enjoy Talking With 一个你乐于和他聊天的人

A Person You Live with 一个和你一起住的人

A Person You Visited 一个你看望过的人

A Person You Would Like to Be Similar to 一个你希望能和他很像的人

雅思口语考试的第二部分的话题可归类的特点可以为考生备考雅思口语考试Part 2节省大量时间。

第5节 雅思口语考试Part 3得分要诀

雅思口语考试的第三部分Part 3涉及以下几个测试技能：

- A. Advantages & Disadvantages (优点和缺点分析)
- B. Personal Opinions (表达个人看法)
- C. Changes (已经发生的变化和将要发生的变化)
- D. Currents Problems & Personal Solutions (目前存在的问题和个人解决办法)

雅思口语考试Part 3和雅思写作Task 2有惊人的相似之处。对于Part 3的准备方法和雅思写作的大作文也就非常接近了。如果要在Part 3有好的表现，并且得到高分，不仅需要扎实的**语言掌控力**，而且还要有**扎实的背景知识和常识**，因为很多问题即使用中文回答都很难。而且Part 3题目的话题是承接Part 2的。大家通过一个话题的Part 2和Part 3的例子来看一下Part 3和Part 2的衔接以及Part 3的问题特点，这里给大家的Sample是一个9分考生的现场回答。大家先看第二部分的话题（Travel）。

Describe a holiday you have taken.

You should say:

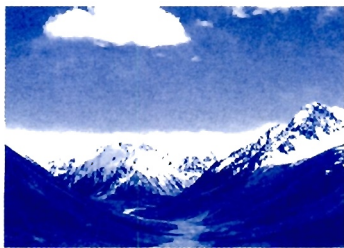
Where you went.

When you took this holiday.

How you spent your time.

And whether you enjoyed the holiday or not.

Here is a sample answer to this topic.



I always wanted to visit Xinjiang and last summer holiday, I went there with a group of my classmates from university. We travelled to Urumqi by train and stayed there for a week. The most important place we wanted to see was Heaven's Lake and Tianshan, north east of Urumqi. This lake is amazingly beautiful as it is very large, the water is crystal clear and it is surrounded by pine trees on the hillsides around the lake. You can even see snow-capped mountains reflected in the lake, which makes the sight like a picture. We took lots of photos and when I looked at them I was surprised at the clear blue color of the sky and the water. The other impressive scenery in Xinjiang was the grasslands. I have seen pictures of this in television series, but it felt so special to be there and experience the openness of this country. We stayed with local people in their unique type of house. I'll always remember how friendly and welcoming they were, and we really enjoyed the local food which they provided. It was a great holiday which we all enjoyed.

Discussion

Q: What role does tourism play in a country's economy?

A: The role that tourism plays varies between countries. Some places rely a lot on tourism, for example I know that Hawaii and Bali in Indonesia are places where a lot of tourists go.

Q: And what about the role that tourism plays in your country?

A: In China, tourism is playing an increasingly significant role in our country's economy. Since the opening up of China, tourism has been an increasing source of foreign currency for China. Because we have a long history and a lot of traditional cultures, I think that many people in the world are interested in visiting China and learning more about our history and culture. In addition to the historical and cultural places of interest, we have some areas of spectacular natural beauty and many people visit these places also.

Q: And are there some areas in your country where tourism is having a negative effect?

A: I'm not sure, but I imagine so. Now that more people are visiting places like the Great Wall, there is probably damage being done to some of it. Tourists often leave a lot of rubbish, so in another way tourism has a negative effect. I know that the government has very strict rules at Jiu Zhai Gou to minimize the negative impact of tourism on the environment there.

More Questions

- How can travellers prepare themselves for travelling in another country?
- What do most people do in your country on their holidays?
- What places would you recommend tourists from overseas to visit in your country?
- Tourism is destroying many of the world's most beautiful places. Do you agree?
- Do you think that travelling overseas on holidays helps people understand other cultures better? How?
- Ecotourism should be encouraged because it does not damage the environment. Do you agree?
- What is your concept of culture shock and what can we do about it?
- Has tourism negatively affected an area in your country?
- Will more Chinese people travel overseas more in the future? Why?
- Should people travel in their own country before going overseas?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of group tours?

大家从以上这个例子可以看出，雅思口语考试Part 3的难度相当高，需要考生花一定的时间把口语考试第三部分和写作第二部分放在一起准备，这样才能保证雅思口语考试整体分数的提高！

第6节 雅思口语模板与套句的学习与使用

第1节讨论过哪三种套句是雅思口语考试中考生常犯的低级错误，但是在雅思口语备考的过程中，模板和套句不可避免地是要学习和运用的，究竟哪些模板和套句可以帮助考生获取7分甚至更高的分数呢？这里就要跟大家说明套句和模板的特点了。

实用的、有效的套句实际上就是指可以随意变化和自如运用的句型，也就是大家在表达一种语言逻辑的时候可以运用的句式特点。比如说一个考生在表达“理由”的时候，如果只用because, as或者for这三个词的话，分数就不会很高，也就是5~6分的水准。那么如果要得到7分以上，应该用哪些句式呢？请看以下这些句子：

● the main reason is that...

例句：I started reading fiction novels regularly when I was a primary school student. The main reason is that they are educational and entertaining.

翻译：自小学起，我就时常阅读科幻小说，主要因为它们寓教于乐。

● mainly because...

例句：People like to watch games mainly because they can enrich our leisure time.

翻译：人们喜爱看比赛主要是因为比赛能充实我们的闲暇生活。

● the only reason...

例句：The only reason that I find singing interesting is that I can always renew my friendship by singing karaoke with my friends.

翻译：使我觉得唱歌有趣的唯一理由是我总是可以通过和我朋友一起唱卡拉OK来重拾友谊。

● on account of...

例句：On account of my allergies, I don't play many outdoor sports in the spring and summer.

翻译：由于我的过敏体质，我在春夏两季不做户外运动。

以上四个所谓的套句就是考生要学习的，也就是那些可以帮助考生获得高分的句式结构。因此，套句的学习归根到底就是多样化丰富句式的学习，只有学会了各种句式，口语的表达才能丰富起来。

有的考生会问：“是不是只要我掌握了各种句式，成绩就一定会飞速提高呢？”其实也不一定。关键是要看考生用完套句（各种句式）之后自己的语言表述。有的考生在考试中句式用得很漂亮，但是所用的套句之外的自己的语言却是漏洞百出。这样一来，两者形成了鲜明的反差，考官也就能一眼看出哪些是考生专门背过的，哪些是考生自己现场说的。因此，对于程度较好的考生来说，套句的学习能使得他的雅思口语考试成绩有很大的飞跃，而对于程度较低的考生来说，套句学习的同时还要结合自己语言能力（包括基本语法和基本词汇）的提高，这样才能最大限度地发挥套句的作用。

另外一个大家要关注的就是模板问题。跟雅思写作一样，模板的使用对于那些语言实力不是很强的考生来说有比较大的帮助。大家以前所知道的模板是“some people..., other people... But I think...”这种类型的。而本书所提倡的模板并不是这种样式的。我所说的模板是思路以及对答案的拓展方式。这样的“模板”一旦学会了，不论考生英语程度的好坏，都可以让考生在考试中处于不败之地，因为考生一直可以有话说，有了思路就有内容，有了内容就可以一直说。所以思维方式的模板是大家要努力学习的！那么，这种模板的具体形式是什么呢？请看以下的例子：

Q: Is it dangerous for people to spend too much time on hobbies?

※明确回答问题，给出中立观点。可以从正反两方面进行阐述：一方面，适当地从事兴趣爱好对人们身心有好处；另一方面，过度沉溺于兴趣爱好可能造成不良影响。

A: It depends. If we do a lot of entertaining indoor and outdoor activities, we can develop not only our spirit but also our physical body. But if we overindulge in hobbies and neglect our many social responsibilities, the result could be harmful.

以上中文和英文粗体标出的部分也就是我们所推崇的模板，这样的模板如果熟练掌握，绝对是能得7~8分的。大家再来看一个例子：

Q: Do you think hobbies are beneficial to social life?

※用完整句回答问题以争取思考时间，解释说明论证观点，列举各种好处如丰富社会生活，促进友谊，甚至产生经济效益。

A: Yes. I think hobbies are a meaningful aspect of social life. People will engage in the activities they take a fancy to (喜爱) and have fun together, thus they can enjoy a life full of social activities (社会活动) and make friends with whomever they share interests with. Furthermore, taking up certain hobbies like weaving (编织) or carving (雕刻) can even yield/produce financial profit (产生经济效益).

这个例子中的中文部分“用完整句回答问题以争取思考时间，解释说明论证观点，列举各种好处”也就是我们所说的模板。在参考答案中的thus表示因果，furthermore表示递进，都是大家要学习和运用的高分模板。也就是高分思维方式！

第 2 章

雅思口语考试

四大杀手锏



IELTS Speaking Skills

要想在雅思口语考试中获取高分，必须从考官的角度去看问题，如何才能使考官给考生打出7分、8分甚至接近于满分的分数呢？考生需要的是雅思口语四大杀手锏，这四个方面就是从雅思评分标准的四个方面出发来仔细探究如何做到发音、语法、词汇和流利程度的完全发挥。如果在临考前已经把这四个方面做到彻底研究和了解并运用自如，那雅思口语考试就是考生个人英语水平和口才展示的舞台，如果没能做到，那雅思口语考试就是打无准备之仗，分数高低完全是碰运气了。

第1节 发音杀手铜

——像一个英国人或美国人在说话

发音是考生开始说英语时给人的第一印象，发音虽然是考官评分标准中的一个方面，但是发音好的考生会给考官一个非常好的印象，并且使考官感到考生有非常扎实的语言基础。因为发音好的考生要么就是学过很长时间的英语，也就是所谓的“沉浸式学习法”，要么就是在国外生活或者工作过，还有一个可能就是很喜欢看美剧！

如果考生的发音听上去就像一个美国人或者英国人在说英文，不仅会让考生的发音部分评分非常高，同时还会带动流利程度和连贯性的评分。所以同样英文水平的两个考生，发音好的和发音不好的差距在1~2分，甚至更大！

一个考生如果发音非常好，即使有一些停顿，考官也会觉得是在积极思考，在用独特的方式处理考官的问题，而不会认为考生在语言上有问题。而且发音好的考生对于连读和尾音辅音的轻度特点有极好的掌控能力，这样一来，流利程度就大大提高了。一旦流利程度提高了，单位时间里面所说的内容就丰富，所体现的词汇和语法也就具有多样性了。从我口语教学的经验来看，雅思口语考试分数的高低很大一部分取决于发音的好坏。

www.luckbar.com.cn
唯一QQ: 2029808

“我在雅思口语考试中是讲英式英语还是美式英语呢？”

对于这样的一个问题，我会对大多数考生讲，你在考试中说的都是中式英语（Chinglish），或者我会对一个考生说，你的英文带中国口音（Chinese Accent）。

很多中国考生想要在发音上模仿英式或者美式的英语口语，但是大多数人都失败了。原因是什么呢？



第一个原因是没有足够的时间去听标准的美式或者英式英语。

如果要把一种语言说好或者是把一种英语口语练好，首先是要接受几百甚至上千小时的听力特训。只有达到一定的听力训练的量，才能把自己的口音纠正过来，而且还只能是连续听同一种口音的，还不能泛听，绝对不能把各种口音的英语混起来听，那样做的话即使听几年口语的发音也不会有变化。所以要通过听力提高口语就是要盯着一种口音来听。比如同学喜欢CNN新闻主播的口音和语调。那就要天天听这个人的说话，连续听几个月，然后说英语的时候腔调就跟他很像了。如果同学喜欢Nicole Kidman的澳大利亚口音，那就要天天看她主演的电影。三个月到半年以后，再说英文的时候发音就跟她很像了。

第二个原因是没有机会说。很多中国考生在考试中发音很差是因为平时几乎没有机会说英文。很多同学会说去English Corner或者English Club练习英文，但是大家忽视了一点，就是在很多英语角的活动中的都是中国人之间在说英文，这样一来，大家的发音并没有变好，只是原本不好的发音变得熟练了。在这方面，美国的ETS给大家一个很好的建议：“*Join in the Internet Voice Chat.*”

网络聊天室是一个非常好的练习口语的途径。大家可以用Google搜索相关的在美国或者英国的网络聊天室，这样就有许多机会跟在美国和英国的Native Speakers交流，对提高发音水平来说有很大的帮助。

有同学会问：“要想说话像一个美国人或者英国人我要注意什么呢？有没有什么窍门呢？”

在这里我给大家三个小窍门：单词重读、句子语调和句子节奏。

首先来看单词重读。对某些要强调的单词重读可以提高考生的发音特点，逐渐向英语为母语的人靠拢。下面来看一个美国人写的单词重读产生语义变化的句子：

When you are speaking English, the words you stress can change the underlying meaning of a sentence. Let's take a look at the following sentence:

I don't think he should get the job.

This simple sentence can have many levels of meaning based on the word you stress. Consider the meaning of the following sentences with the stressed word in bold. Read each sentence aloud and give a strong stress to the word in bold:

I don't think he should get the job. (重音在I上面)

Meaning: Somebody else thinks he should get the job.

I **don't** think he should get the job. (重音在don't上面)

Meaning: It's not true that I think he should get the job.

I don't **think** he should get the job. (重音在think上面)

Meaning: That's not really what I mean. OR I'm not sure he'll get the job.

I don't think **he** should get the job. (重音在he上面)

Meaning: Somebody else should get the job.

I don't think he **should** get the job. (重音在should上面)

Meaning: In my opinion it's wrong that he's going to get the job.

I don't think he should **get** the job. (重音在get上面)

Meaning: He should have to earn (be worthy of, work hard for) the job.

I don't think he should get **the** job. (重音在the上面)

Meaning: He should get another job.

I don't think he should get the **job**. (重音在job上面)

Meaning: Maybe he should get something else instead.

As you can see, there are many different ways this sentence can be understood. The important point to remember is that **the true meaning of the sentence is also expressed through the stressed word or words.** (通过对单词的强调可以突出句子的具体含义)

大家再来做一个小练习:

I said she might consider a new haircut.

Say the sentence aloud using the stressed word marked in bold. Once you have spoken the sentence a few times, match the sentence version to the meaning below.

1. **I** said she might consider a new haircut.
2. I **said** she might consider a new haircut.
3. I said **she** might consider a new haircut.
4. I said she **might** consider a new haircut.
5. I said she might **consider** a new haircut.
6. I said she might consider a **new** haircut.
7. I said she might consider a new **haircut**.

大家做完了吗? 对一下答案吧!

然后再读一遍, 看看有没有语感。

- Not just a haircut.
- It's a possibility.
- It was my idea.
- Not something else.
- Don't you understand me?
- Not another person.
- She should think about it, it's a good idea.

1. I said she might consider a new haircut.
It was my idea.
2. I **said** she might consider a new haircut.
Don't you understand me?
3. I said **she** might consider a new haircut.
Not another person.
4. I said she **might** consider a new haircut.
It's a possibility.
5. I said she might **consider** a new haircut.
She should think about it. It's a good idea.
6. I said she might consider a **new** haircut.
Not just a haircut.
7. I said she might consider a new **haircut**.
Not something else.

第二个方面就是句子语调。句子语调是口音好坏的非常重要的一个方面。句子语调其实和单词重音是相结合的。大家来看看美国教授的一段文字：

Say this sentence aloud and count how many seconds it takes.

The beautiful mountain appeared transfixed in the distance.

Time required? Probably about 5 seconds. Now, try speaking this sentence aloud.

He can come on Sundays as long as he doesn't have to do any homework in the evening.

Time required? Probably about 5 seconds.

Wait a minute. The first sentence is much shorter than the second sentence!

The beautiful mountain appeared transfixed in the distance.

He can come on Sundays as long as he doesn't have to do any homework in the evening.

You are only partially right!

This simple exercise makes a very important point about how we speak and use English. Namely, English is considered as a stressed language while many other languages are considered syllabic. What does that mean? It means that, in English, we give stress to certain words while other words are quickly spoken (some students say eaten). In other languages, such as French or Italian, each syllable receives equal importance (there is stress, but each syllable has its own length).

Many speakers of syllabic languages don't understand why we quickly speak, or swallow, a number of words in a sentence. In syllabic languages each syllable has equal importance, and therefore equal time is needed. English however, spends more time on specific stressed words while quickly gliding over the other, less important, words.

Let's look at a simple example: the modal verb "can". When we use the positive form of "can", we quickly glide over the "can" and it is hardly pronounced.

They can come on Friday.

On the other hand, when we use the negative form "can't" we tend to stress the fact that it is the negative form by also stressing "can't".

They can't come on Friday.

As you can see from the above examples, the sentence "They can't come on Friday" is longer than "They can come on Friday" because both the modal "can't" and the verb "come" are stressed.

So, what does this mean for our speaking skills?

Well, first of all, you need to understand which words we generally stress and which we do not stress. Basically, stress words are considered **CONTENT WORDS** such as:

- nouns e.g. kitchen, Peter
- (most) principal verbs e.g. visit, construct
- adjectives e.g. beautiful, interesting
- adverbs e.g. often, carefully

Non-stressed words are considered **FUNCTION WORDS** such as:

- determiners e.g. the, a, some, a few
- auxiliary verbs e.g. don't, am, can, were
- prepositions e.g. before, next to, opposite
- conjunctions e.g. but, while, as
- pronouns e.g. they, she, us

Let's return to the beginning example to demonstrate how this affects speech.

The beautiful mountain appeared transfixed in the distance. (14 syllables)

He can come on Sundays as long as he doesn't have to do any homework in the evening.
(22 syllables)

Even though the second sentence is approximately 30% longer than the first, the sentences take the same time to speak. This is because there are 5 **stressed** words in each sentence. From this example, you can see that you needn't worry about pronouncing every word clearly to be understood (we native speakers certainly don't). You should, however, concentrate on pronouncing the **stressed** words clearly.

Now, do some listening comprehension or go speak to your native English speaking friends and listen to how they concentrate on the **stressed** words rather than giving importance to each syllable. You will soon find that you can understand and communicate more because you begin to listen for (and use in speaking) **stressed** words. All those words that you thought you didn't understand are really not crucial for understanding the sense or making yourself understood. **Stressed** words are the key to excellent pronunciation and understanding of English.

I hope this short introduction to the importance of stress in English will help you to improve your understanding and speaking skills.

相信大家都能看懂这段文字，英语为母语的人是如何来说英语的：重读和轻读是非常重要的一个环节。英语是一种强调化语言，跟其他语言有很大的差别。因此，雅思口语考生在考场中说英文的时候也要特别注意这一点，有意识地去重读那些想要强调的词，弱读一些介词和连词等。要练到像美国人或者英国人那样说话必须有4~6周的强化训练，专门去准备一些雅思口语的题目和参考答案来练习重读和语调。

另外一个特点就是句子节奏。说英语一定要有节奏。有考生会问：“我怎么能够说英语有节奏呢？有没有什么教程呢？”答案其实非常简单，有两种方法可以使大家说话有节奏：第一是看美剧*Friends*或者*Prison Break*，这种喜剧类和剧情类的美剧中的对话都是非常夸张的，看多了说话就有节奏了。第二就是多听R&B或者Hip-Hop的英文歌曲。

那么对于雅思口语考试的发音，考官是怎么看的呢？下面一段是雅思口语考官对于发音这部分打分的解释：

- ★ Overall, clear and understandable pronunciation is the main thing.
- ★ Secondly, the correct use of the following features will determine the pronunciation grade:
 - ☆ basic word pronunciation;

- ☆ linked speech sounds;
- ☆ correct and appropriate sentence stress (i.e., which word or words in a sentence are stressed more than others);
- ☆ appropriate use of intonation (rising and falling) to emphasize meaning.
- ★ Slightly inaccurate (= unclear) pronunciation is usually understandable if the correct words and grammar are used but slightly inaccurate pronunciation combined with other errors can result in language that is not understandable at all.
- ★ American pronunciation is acceptable.

优秀的发音是雅思口语考试高分的关键，但是光靠发音是不够的，还需要注重其他几个方面。

第2节 流利程度和连贯性杀手锏

很多考生不理解流利程度和连贯性在雅思口语考试中考官是如何理解和评分的。这里我要从考官的角度向大家具体介绍Fluency and Coherence评分项目的特点。

Fluency and coherence are two different things but are grouped together because neither fluency nor coherence alone is considered as important as pronunciation, grammar or vocabulary. Fluency and coherence are both concerned with “the flow of language”—fluency concerns the physical flow of language while coherence concerns the logical “flow of interconnected ideas”.

上面这段考官的文字非常能够说明问题，流利和连贯在雅思口语考试中并不能分开，是作为一个整体评分标准来考查考生的口语的。两者都是测试考生的语言流畅性，这两者的区别是Fluency是看考生口齿清晰方面的流利而Coherence是看考生观点逻辑衔接方面的流畅。

You need to satisfy the requirements for both fluency and coherence to get a particular score for this combined item. In other words, if the examiner thinks you are a Band 6 for Fluency but only a Band 5 for Coherence, you will only get a sub-grade of Band 5 for the combined “Fluency and Coherence”.

考官在打分时是同时看考生这两方面的表现的，如果考生的Fluency是6分而Coherence是5分，那么这个单项的综合评分就是5分了，以低的那个分数为准。因此，考生要综合提高两方面的素质，既要嘴上流利，内容上也要有逻辑。

Fluency 流利程度

下面大家来看考官对于Fluency的具体分析：

For fluency, examiners notice three related things: continuity, speed and smoothness.

在流利程度方面，考官着重看的是三个方面：连续性、语速和流畅性。

方面一 那么究竟什么是Continuity（连续性）呢？

This refers to your ability to just “keep talking”, without too many unnatural pauses. (Natural pauses are the very short pauses that we make when we speak in order to show the completion of an idea; to think of the best word; to consider an answer to a question; or to give dramatic effect.) Long pauses are unnatural and usually result from the speaker searching for vocabulary or making a complete sentence in his head before speaking. Pauses at inappropriate places in your speech are also unnatural. Many candidates who have long, unnatural pauses in their speech often do this because they are checking their grammar before speaking. In

other words, they are overly worried about making grammatical mistakes. Similarly, those candidates who translate from Chinese to English before speaking also speak with long pauses. In the test itself, you should concentrate more on letting your speech “flow out” rather than worrying too much about grammar. Yes, keep grammar in mind, but in the test you should rely more on the habits of correct grammar that you had practiced in your preparation before the test. You will get a better score this way.

雅思口语考试中不要有不自然的停顿是得高分的重要一环，同时在口语考试的时候不要去想语法有没有错，想语法的正确与否再去纠正会大大影响口语考试说话的连续性。

Some candidates break the continuity of their speech by correcting themselves too much. If a candidate corrects himself or herself too frequently, this could result in a loss of continuity. Therefore, you should not self-correct more than 2 or 3 times in the whole test and only do it if you think you made a major mistake that could cause confusion to the listener or if you think the mistake just “sounds terrible”. Furthermore, you should do it quickly so that the continuity of your speech doesn’t seem too disrupted.

同时，雅思口语考官建议口语考试的时候不要去太多次纠正自己的英文，整场考试2~3次最多了，除非是影响理解的严重错误。

Similarly, avoid unnecessary repetition of what you have just said. (This is usually done by Band 3 and Band 4 speakers who do not have confidence in their English.)

One way to avoid unnaturally long pauses is to communicate to the examiner, by speaking, what you are thinking as you prepare to answer a question or, in Part 2, as you prepare to say the next thing. For example, instead of sitting there silently while you think of how to answer a question, you could say something such as: “That’s an interesting question!” or “That’s a difficult question!” or “I’ve never thought about that before.” or “Let me think about that.”

当然，考试当中也有很多避免重复词和冷场的方法，考生所要做的就是用一些上面考官说的小窍门来解决。

A very important point is this: many candidates lose points for fluency because they stop talking for unnaturally long periods of time in Part 2—you are expected to speak continuously in Part 2. The main reason why some candidates do this is that they simply can’t think of enough things to say, or can’t think quickly enough of something to say.

雅思口语考试第二部分是考生在连贯性上失分的主要点。很大一部分原因是考生没有思路，无法在一分钟的准备时间里想到足够多的内容来说，如何来构建Part 2的答案的方法在第一章中已经讨论过，在第四章里会有更加详细的论述。

方面二 Speed (语速) 是流利性中第二个重要部分。

其重要性体现在以下几个方面：

If your speech is unnaturally slow, you will lose point for fluency. In the test, if you know that your pronunciation is fairly clear and accurate, you should push yourself to speak a little faster than you would in a normal, non-test conversation.

在发音清楚和准确的基础上，语速尽量要保持正常，考生如果语速过慢将会被扣分。

But if you know that your pronunciation is not so clear or accurate, DON'T push yourself to speak faster because that could cause the examiner to not understand your pronunciation at all! You will lose big points if the examiner cannot understand you at all.

对于那些基础不好的考生，在发音不是很准确的情况下，尽量不要加快语速，否则考官将完全不理解考生所说的内容，从而导致分数的大幅下降。

Some teachers tell (all) students NOT to speak fast in the test. This is a mistake, I believe, because sometimes all the students then think that they should speak slowly. Only those students with poor pronunciation should speak slowly, but only slowly enough to be understood clearly. The candidate who speaks a little slowly in order to be clear will lose a little on the fluency sub-scale but that is far better than losing big points in the pronunciation sub-score for being totally incomprehensible.

以上这段文字非常值得大家解读。考官认为一些中教告诉考生在雅思口语考试中语速不要快。这是一个错误的说法，因为这会让所有的考生误解，都认为要在雅思口语考试中慢慢地说英语。其实，英语说得慢只是针对那些英语发音比较差的考生而言的，那些发音很好的考生语速过于缓慢反而会影响流利程度的分数。

方面三 Smoothness（流畅性）是Fluency的第三个重要组成部分。

Smoothness is actually related to speed. If you don't use the two methods mentioned below to "smooth" your speech, it will be harder to speak at a natural speed. Two of the main ways to make your speech smoother are: a) to link your words and, b) to use contractions.

流畅性就是指自然的速度，越自然得分就越高。这部分两个关键词是单词的连贯性和缩写式。

Linked Speech 连贯的语流

In natural spoken English, most words are not spoken as single words but are linked with the preceding and following words. If you try to say each word individually, it will not sound "smooth" and it will almost certainly be too slow. One of the main examples of linking is the pronunciation of words that begin with a vowel sound.

单词的连读是口语的流利程度中非常重要的一个评分点。如果一个考生在整个考试中没有出现过连读的单词，那么他的分数不会高！

有考生会问怎么来训练连读呢，我的建议是从听力入手！剑桥雅思真题集的听力有很多的素材可以供大家模仿，听听看听力段子当中的学生和教授是怎么说话的，对于大家感受连读是很直观的。

Contracted Speech 缩写式

In natural spoken English, we use the contracted forms of some verb constructions most of the time. Examples of contractions are: “I’m” = “I am”; “He’ll” = “He will”; and, “I’d” = “I would”. We use the full forms to show emphasis or when we want to speak especially clearly for some reason, such as when stating a name.

The contracted forms are a faster way to speak and they are spoken in a smoother way than two separate words. Therefore, using contractions improves your fluency.

In the IELTS Speaking test, you should try to use the contracted forms at least 50% of the time. But don’t worry if you use the full form sometimes (caused by your old habits of speech). Certainly, don’t correct yourself if you use the full form. Using the full form is not considered to be “wrong”—it is simply more natural and therefore more suitable to use the contractions most of the time.

考官所建议的缩写式就是把一些原本分开来的两个词用缩写形式读出来，从而显得更为流畅。这并不是强制性的要求，但是如果考生能够做到，那就是锦上添花了。

说完了流利，接下来就要来看看这个评分标准中的另外一个组成部分。

Coherence 连贯性

同样地，考生要关注雅思口语考官对这个评分点的解释。

The verb “cohere” means “to stick together as a mass or a group”. In other words, the different parts of a whole are connected or linked. When referring to language, “coherence” is mostly about the linkage of ideas.

这个评分标准简单来说就是看考生的回答是不是思路清楚，内容上是不是有逻辑。

Coherent language is easy to follow because the ideas are linked using special linking words and phrases (= “connectives”). In other words, the absence of key linking words or phrases can make your language less coherent.

有意识地使用连接词在雅思口语考试中显得非常必要。

Obviously, before you can show the language of linking ideas, you have to say several things, not just one thing. In other words, the first way to get some points for coherence is to speak extended answers, with extra information, not answers that only address the basic question, without adding anything extra. First answer the question directly, then develop your answer with extra information that is related to the question.

Extended (or “developed”) answers are also more coherent because they help the listener (or reader) better understand your meaning. For instance, adding an example of what you mean helps the listener understand. The more “understandable” or “clear” your answer is, the

more it can be called “a coherent” answer.

雅思口语考试中答案的扩展也是得分手段之一，也就是说在回答完YES / NO 之后要给出更加丰富的内容来扩展答案，举例子同样也是能给考生加分的。

Another aspect of coherent language is the logical placement of the ideas. That is, the ideas are stated in a logical order. For example, if you are explaining something that has several steps, you first talk about the first step and continue on to the last step. In this case, the linking words at the beginning of the sentences should be words such as “First”, “Second”, “Next”, “Then”, and “Finally”.

表示逻辑顺序的连接词运用恰当是Coherence得高分的关键。

接下来是考官提供的一个例子来说明使用连接词来衔接观点。

“If you’ve got a lot of money and especially if you think you can get a good job when you come back to China, studying for an MBA overseas could be a good idea. **On the other hand**, it might not be the wisest decision if your family has to make financial sacrifices to allow you to study overseas because returning MBAs often can’t find good-paying positions in China.”

The words, “On the other hand” is the linking phrase. It tells the listener (or reader) that the second sentence is an alternative idea to the first sentence. (There are different linking phrases, representing different meanings.) This linking phrase does two things: It serves as an introduction to the second sentence and it links to the idea of the first sentence. Overall, the linking phrase makes it easier for the listener to understand your meaning in the remainder of the second sentence.

大家从考官的评论中可以发现，连接词是得分的关键因素。如果在雅思口语考试的过程中考生没有使用任何连接词或者连接词使用不充分，那么即使该考生的口语能力再强，也会被扣去相应的分数！

Good coherence is important in language because if a speaker makes errors in pronunciation, grammar or vocabulary (or all three), or if there is background noise (such as when talking on a telephone), the listener can probably still understand the meaning because he or she was given an introduction to what you are going to say. In addition, when you are speaking about something complex, it is a good communication skill to give the listener special help in following what you are saying so that the listener does not have to strain too hard to follow you. (This also applies to your writing in the Writing test.)

良好的连贯性是得高分的关键评分点。如果考生的发音、语法或者词汇都有问题，但是他的口语内容里面有开头、中间和结尾的逻辑顺序，那么考官还是可以理解他所说的内容的，得分也不会很低。而且，在说复杂内容的时候，逻辑连贯显得尤其重要。一定要记住自己的内容要有逻辑，要让考官完全能够听懂所说的内容，否则语言上再好，分数也不会高，这一点也适用于雅思写作。

Using good coherence is especially important when a speaker speaks for a long time, as in Part 2 or when a speaker is explaining something rather complex or abstract, as in the answers for many Part 3 questions.

考生在Part 2和Part 3回答长时间问题和抽象复杂问题的时候，要非常注重良好的逻辑连贯性，具体的原因来看下面一段考官的具体分析：

In the Speaking test, many candidates speak in a way that can be generally understood, i.e., they speak in a way that is not particularly unclear, illogical or inconsistent. This is often because they just say simple things. In addition, the IELTS examiner might understand you because he or she knows what to expect when you give an answer, based on the examiner's experience. However, the examiner's job is to also consider how well you would be understood by a typical English-speaker overseas. In order to get a good sub-score (6 or above) for coherence, you have to clearly demonstrate that you know about the joining words and phrases and can use them correctly. (To get a 6 for Coherence, you will be forgiven for making a few mistakes in the correct usage of joining words and phrases—just show that you have knowledge of this and are trying!)

从上面考官的一段解释发现，如果要在Coherence部分得到6分，那么考生一定要有意地使用各种连接词。

大家再看一段考官的解释：

By giving extra details, you will be making your language more coherent (=easy to understand) because these extra details help the listener to understand more clearly what you meant in the first part of your answer. In fact, by giving extra details to your basic answer, you can demonstrate good coherence in two ways: a) by simply giving extra ideas that are related to the first idea in your basic answer and, b) in the way you connect these extra ideas to your basic answer by using phrases such as “For example, ...”, “In other words, ...” etc.

还有一个考官要告诉大家的重要信息：

Another important aspect of coherence is to understand what the question really means so that your answer actually suits the question. Although you should answer questions directly, that does not always mean that you should answer questions immediately. For example, if you are asked a rather complex question in Part 3, it's very suitable to begin your answer with an introductory statement before you address the actual question. One example of this is to say, “Well, it depends on the situation. If...then...but, on the other hand, if...then...”.

从上文中发现，听懂考官的问题并准确回答问题是非常关键的。很多考生没有听懂考官的问题就急忙回答问题，结果造成文不对题，即使回答了很多内容，分数也没有得到。而且，在Part 3的难题被问及的时候，考生并不需要立即回答，可以用以上考官提到过的“Well, it depends on the situation. If...then...but, on the other hand, if...then...”这样的导入句子来延缓时间，给自己足够的思考时间。

Showing your coherence skills becomes more important as you progress through the test from Part 1 to Part 3. In Part 2, where you describe something in detail for about 1.5 minutes and therefore speak several sentences on the one topic, it is important to show connections between these sentences. And in Part 3, showing good coherence is especially important because many (or most) of the questions require answers that link several ideas or several statements.

要记住，在整个雅思口语考试的过程中，要不断展示考生自己的逻辑连贯的能力。在Part 2中考生要注意句子之间的逻辑衔接，在Part 3中考生要把各种观点和理由进行逻辑衔接，具体例子见本书第5章。

第3节 词汇杀手铜

——适合的词汇就是最好的词汇

雅思口语的词汇是考生非常关注的一个方面，因为大多数考生在雅思口语考试中的冷场现象很大程度上是因为在表达某个意思的时候突然忘记了这个词的英文表达方式，导致中断现象的存在。比如考官问：What kind of mail do you usually get? 这个时候考生想说的内容是垃圾邮件和账单，但是突然忘记这两个词英文是如何表达的，从而导致整个答案无法表达出来，其实如果词汇量在2000~3000的考生就会这样说：

Sometimes I think the only mail I get is **junk** mail (垃圾邮件) and **bills** (账单). I get a lot of **flyers** (广告单) from supermarkets and cards from travel agencies (旅行社). Every once in a while, I get a nice postcard from a friend or a care package (为远离家庭的人寄送的信件) from my parents but usually my mail is pretty boring.

以上这些彩色标注的词汇都不是难词或者怪词，而是一些生活中的常用词，因此雅思口语考生要多去学那些2000~3000常用词，大学英语四级词汇已经足以应付雅思口语考试了。

有些考生会问应该掌握哪些词汇，去背哪些词汇书呢？

雅思口语词汇和阅读、听力以及写作词汇有着根本的区别。因为口语考试中词汇几乎是第一反应说出来的，如果这个词是新背出来的或者是超过自己掌控范围的新词，那么考生就不会把这个词说出来，但是雅思口语考试的话题决定了某些词汇是要经过精心准备的，比如雅思口语考试的法律话题有很多词汇要求考生在之前的准备过程中进行集中记忆，以应付Part 2和Part 3的考试。那么法律类话题有哪些词汇呢？请看以下这些：

1. to commit a crime = to break the law 犯罪，违法
2. to disregard the law, to violate the law 藐视法律，犯法
3. to obey the law = to abide by the law 遵守法律
4. a law-abiding citizen 奉公守法的市民
5. a crime = an infraction of the law = an offence 犯罪，违反法律
6. violent crime 暴力犯罪
7. economic crime 经济犯罪
8. a crime of passion 情杀罪，冲动犯罪
9. criminal negligence 过失犯罪

10. a “white collar crime” 白领犯罪
11. a “victimless crime” 无受害者犯罪
12. a criminal = a law breaker 罪犯，犯法的人
13. a juvenile delinquent 少年犯
14. be required by the law 依法的，法定的
15. against the law = illegal 违法的
16. within the law = legal, lawful 合法的，法律许可的
17. to “be above the law” 凌驾于法律之上，不受法律限制
18. to “turn to crime”, to “be driven to crime” 走上犯罪道路
19. organized crime 有组织的犯罪，集团犯罪
20. a criminal gang 犯罪集团，犯罪团伙
21. to prohibit 禁止，阻止
22. to ban 禁止，取缔
23. treason 叛逆，通敌
24. a felony 重罪
25. a misdemeanor 轻罪
26. murder 谋杀
27. manslaughter 杀人，过失杀人罪
28. assault 袭击
29. theft (a thief) 偷窃（小偷）
30. robbery (a robber) 抢夺（强盗）
31. burglary (a burglar) 夜盗行为（夜贼）
32. rape (a rapist) 强奸（强奸犯）
33. kidnapping 诱拐，绑架
34. fraud 欺诈
35. blackmail 勒索
36. bribery 行贿
37. graft 贪污，受贿
38. corruption 腐败，贪污

- 39. extortion 勒索，敲诈
- 40. slander 诽谤
- 41. to defame 诽谤
- 42. smuggling 走私
- 43. piracy 盗版
- 44. forgery 伪造
- 45. fake, counterfeit 伪造，假冒
- 46. drug trafficking 毒品走私
- 47. arson 纵火
- 48. insurance fraud 诈欺保险
- 49. bigamy 重婚罪
- 50. vandalism 故意毁坏文物的行为
- 51. gambling 赌博
- 52. a petty crime 轻度犯罪
- 53. a “con man”, a confidence trickster 骗子
- 54. a victim 受害者
- 55. compensation 补偿，赔偿
- 56. insider trading 内幕交易
- 57. prison = gaol (Br.) = jail (U.S. but also used in Britain and Australia) 监狱
- 58. punishment = a penalty 处罚
- 59. capital punishment = the death penalty 死刑
- 60. a sentence, to sentence, to pass sentence 宣判
- 61. a fine 罚款
- 62. a criminal record 前科，犯罪记录
- 63. a regulation, to regulate 规则，管制
- 64. a harsh law, a harsh sentence 苛刻的法律，重判
- 65. a lenient sentence, a light sentence 轻判
- 66. to arrest someone 拘捕某人
- 67. innocent, guilty 清白的，有罪的

- 68. the police, the police force 警察部门，警察机关
- 69. a policeman, a policewoman, a police officer (U.S.) 警察，女警，警官
- 70. a police station, a police car, a police dog 警察局，警车，警犬
- 71. traffic police 交警
- 72. a detective 侦探
- 73. forensic science 司法科学
- 74. law enforcement, to enforce the law = to uphold the law 法律实施，执行法律
- 75. crime prevention 犯罪预防
- 76. a deterrence 制止，威慑
- 77. a crackdown on crime 对犯罪进行制裁
- 78. to combat crime, to fight crime 打击犯罪
- 79. to prosecute, to defend 起诉，辩护
- 80. to be convicted of a crime 宣告有罪
- 81. evidence, proof 证据
- 82. a witness 证人，目击者
- 83. a law court = a court of law 法院，法庭
- 84. a trial 审判
- 85. a judge 法官
- 86. a magistrate 地方法官，地方官员
- 87. a lawyer = an attorney (U.S.), a barrister (Br.), a solicitor (Br.) 律师
- 88. to practice law 从事法律工作
- 89. a law firm 律师事务所
- 90. a law suit, to sue somebody 提出诉讼
- 91. a license, a business license, a driver's license 执照，营业执照，驾照
- 92. to enact a law, to institute a law, to adopt a law 制定法律，采用法律
- 93. to annul a law, to repeal a law 废除法律

以上93个法律类话题词汇就是考生在准备过程中应该完全掌握的。

类似于法律类话题的难点内容在雅思口语考试中出现得不多，大多数还是考生熟悉

的话题，如兴趣爱好、交通、电脑、课程等话题。因此考生不需要花很长时间去背诵和掌握这些词，只不过是一些难点内容要有意识准备一下。

词汇的得分点还包括准确和恰当的搭配。简单的词组，如果搭配好的话照样可以拿高分。

Education should help children reach **their full potential** (发挥最大潜力).

I think product placements in movies are a good compromise.

其中的product placements: characters in a movie or TV show are seen using a product made by one of the advertisers (电影、电视节目中的)植入式广告

从以上两个例子可以看到，词汇的恰当使用有助于意思的准确表达，也能使考官清楚理解考生说话的内容，从而加强考生口语的逻辑连贯性，从总体上提高雅思口语分数。

另外考生要注意的一点是不能忽略简单话题的词汇，很多Part 1的话题看似简单，但是很多词汇并不是很容易一下子就能够想出来并加以灵活运用的。有一次我在课堂中间问学生喜欢哪种类型的电影，很多学生对于电影类型的表达方式就一无所知，造成冷场的情况。因此在备考雅思口语的过程中，各种类型话题的常用表达方式要掌握，比如电影类型就有以下这些说法：

- **action and adventure** 动作冒险
- **animated cartoons** 动画片
- **comedy** 喜剧
- **drama** 戏剧
- **horror** 恐怖片
- **martial arts** 武术片
- **musicals** 音乐片，歌舞片
- **romance** 爱情片
- **romantic comedy** 浪漫喜剧
- **science fiction** 科幻片
- **silent movies** 无声电影
- **(suspense) thrillers** (悬疑) 惊悚片
- **teen movies** 青少年电影
- **war movies** 战争电影
- **westerns** 西部片
- **documentary films** 纪录片

还有一些电视节目的类型:

- cartoons 卡通
- children's shows 儿童节目
- documentary programs 纪录片节目
- drama (e.g., police dramas) 戏剧 (如警匪片)
- game shows 娱乐节目
- made-for-TV movies (including mini-series) 电视电影 (包括中篇剧集)
- musical video shows (e.g., MTV) 音乐视频节目 (如音乐电视)
- reality TV 真实电视, 真人秀
- situational comedies (sitcoms) 情景喜剧
- comedy shows 喜剧节目
- soap operas 肥皂剧
- sports programs (e.g., live broadcasts of sports events) 体育节目 (如运动项目实况转播)
- talk shows 谈话节目
- The News 新闻
- news programs (stress on first word) 新闻节目 (第一个单词重读)
- current affairs and news analysis (including interviews) 时事新闻分析 (包括采访)
- variety shows (e.g., The Chinese New Year family entertainment program) 综艺节目 (如新年家庭娱乐节目)
- pop music videos 流行音乐录像片
- advertisements (Make sure you can understand the British pronunciation of this word when you hear it) 广告 (请确保在听到该单词的英式发音时能明白)

由此可见, 常用词汇的英文表达方式的掌握对于雅思口语考试的分数起到了决定性作用, 考生背过这些词汇以后在雅思口语的真实考试过程中要挑选适合自己说话内容的词汇来讲, 做到适合自己的就是最好的!

第4节 语法杀手铜

——低级错误要避免

虽然语法也是雅思口语考试的评分要素之一，但是在真实的雅思口语考试过程中，要考生分分秒秒注意语法、讲究句子的复杂程度、不断变换句式的可能性比较低。由于考生先要注重内容的连贯性和词汇的有效性，甚至还要关注自己的语速和发音，这个时候，在语法方面就很难做到句型多样性和复杂性。

那么雅思口语复习过程中考生要学习的方面和注意点是什么呢？归纳起来有两个方面。

方面一 过去时 + 第三人称单数（以及he和she）的使用

在考官眼里，大多数考生雅思口语语法部分的扣分点就是不会使用过去时，在11~14分钟的考试过程中大多数考生从头到尾都没有用过Past Tense。这样一来，语法部分的分数就会直线下降。下面是一个考生谈论有关a holiday I took to Beijing:

Some friends and I went to Beijing two weeks ago and visited some famous sight-seeing places. We went there by night train. We stayed in a nice hotel. We went to the Great Wall and took photos. I like the Great Wall very much. We also went to the Temple of Heaven, the place of old Chinese emperors. We took many photos. The next day we ate famous Beijing Duck. The Beijing duck in Beijing is better than the Beijing duck in Shanghai. We went shopping and bought many presents for our families. I bought pictures of Tiananmen and other famous places. I also bought special famous Beijing food for my family. Next year, I want to go to Xi'an with my friends. Xi'an has a long history. Xi'an is a famous place from the Qin Dynasty.

在整个回答过程中，该考生时时刻刻都在注重过去时态的使用，而不是像大多数考生那样全都是用一般现在时态。因此过去时的应用能力是考生在语法部分分数高低的关键。

请看另外一段高分考生的回答：

Some friends and I went to Hong Kong for a holiday last year. We flew to Hong Kong on a plane and checked into a nice hotel. On the second day, we caught a Hong Kong bus and visited Ocean Park. We enjoyed seeing all the animals, particularly the dolphins. On the third day, we took a tram to Victoria Peak where we got a spectacular view of the city and islands. In the afternoon, we went shopping and bought many things for ourselves and souvenirs for our friends and families. Hong Kong is paradise for shopping. We ate lots of Cantonese food and also seafood which Hong Kong is famous for. The weather was sunny, so it was nice and warm. We had a really good time. Next year, I want to go to Japan with my friends.

以上这段文字中跟时间状态有关的信息都是要用过去时的，而那些常态化的内容，比如香港是购物天堂Hong Kong is paradise for shopping，则用一般现在时。

从上面的两个例子可以看出，在雅思口语考试的过程中不用去刻意关注语法，但是时态的运用不容忽视。

方面二 除了时态之外，he和she，his和her也是大多数考生容易混淆的方面。

在描述一个女性的时候，超过一半的考生说着说着就变成了he和his了，正在阅读本书的各位如果想要知道自己是否会犯这种错误，那么很简单，Describe your mother，连续说2分钟，说的时候用电脑软件或者手机录下来，听听看自己有没有犯这种错误。

除了以上两种低级错误之外，对于那些想在雅思口语语法部分冲击高分的考生来说，要准备哪些内容呢？

我推荐的是从句型入手，学习一些简单的句式结构，使得自己在表达上能够丰富一些，但并不要追求过于复杂的句型和句式结构，在这一节中，大家先来接触一些常用的句式，具体内容会在第三章详细论述。

比如说，在表达对比信息的时候，大家就可以用到以下的句式，请看例子：

while...

例句：While fast food does not contain all the vitamins we need, it is becoming increasingly popular in China.

翻译：尽管快餐中并不包含我们需要的所有维生素，但它在中国还是越来越流行。

although...

例句：Although the restaurant is very small, the menu is quite diverse including western specialties like steak, pizza and French wine.

翻译：尽管这个餐厅很小，但餐单却非常多样化，包括牛排、比萨、法国红酒等西餐中的特色食物。

even though...

例句：Nowadays more and more people subsist on tinned or frozen food even though this kind of food is not healthy.

翻译：尽管罐装或冷冻食品不健康，但现在越来越多的人还是依靠这些食品生活。

even if...

例句：Even if they have time to cook, many people still buy junk food.

翻译：尽管有时间做饭，但许多人还是会买垃圾食品。

再比如说，在表达观点的时候，可以用到以下的句型结构：

What I want to say is that...

例句：What I want to say is that the biggest problem of transportation is traffic jams.

翻译：我想要说的是，交通最大的问题是交通堵塞。

All I want to say is that...

例句：All I want to say is that the government should invest more money in the construction of new roads.

翻译：我想要说的是，政府应该投入更多的钱来建设新的道路。

What I think is that...

例句：What I think is that citizens should be encouraged to take buses instead of driving cars.

翻译：我的想法是，应该鼓励市民多坐公交车，少开私家车。

What I'm concerned about is that...

例句：What I'm concerned about is that the number of private cars in urban areas keeps increasing while funds for public buses decrease.

翻译：我关注的问题是，城区私家车的数量持续上升，但公交车的资金投入却在减少。

由此可见，在雅思口语的备考过程中，对基本句型的学习和掌握还是非常有必要的，考生如果能掌握这些句型，对于Part 1和Part 3的跟考官互动的过程就会显得句型非常多变，同时这些句型也为考生带来很多清晰的思路。而Part 2当中如果能适当运用多种句型，整个2分钟的talk就会显得非常紧凑，就不会发生说了几句话说不下去的情况。

语法和词汇的具体的分析和应用指导将在第3章至第5章中详细展开。

第 3 章

雅思口语考试

Part 1 全解析



An Analysis of IELTS Speaking Part 1

雅思口语考试Part 1是雅思口语考试中相对而言难度最低的一个部分，但是这个部分发挥得好坏对于Part 2和Part 3有着至关重要的影响，甚至决定了整场考试的成败。雅思口语考试是考官在对考生测试的同时会对某些评分项进行评分，比如发音、流利程度等。如果考生在Part 1没有展现出自己应有的水平或者说由于紧张而使得自身的语言水平被完全限制住，那么这个时候考官对考生留下的印象就不会好，最后的分数出来也就不会高，这也是一直所说的一个原则：Part 1没有发挥好，最后的分数一定不会高；Part 1发挥好了，则最后的分数也不一定会高，还要看考生Part 2和Part 3的表现。因此考生要对雅思口语考试Part 1作充分的准备才能确保自己不会输在起跑线上。本章节将会从各方面提高考生雅思口语考试Part 1的应试能力。

第1节 Part 1个人信息类口语考题真题荟萃

在雅思口语考试的Part 1中，雅思口语考官手中会有一本题目手册的文件夹，考官会翻阅文件夹选择不同的话题来测试考生对于特定考题的回答能力，也就是考生的英语水平和逻辑思维。我们收集到了几乎所有的雅思口语考官手中的雅思口语考试真题，从本节开始，将一一为大家展现雅思口语考试的真题，并且会给大家提供实用的应试技能指导以及简单易学的参考答案，请大家慢慢学习。

首先要关注的是个人信息类口语考题，这些考题的大致内容差不多，但是问题的方式比较多，大家来了解一下这些真题。

Do you work or are you a student?

这是一个几乎所有考生都会被问到的问题。怎么来回答好这个问题呢？有以下两种方式：

A: I am a student and I am studying in a university in Shanghai. Well, it is a famous university in China, Shanghai JiaoTong University. And my major is Electronic Communication and I like my major very much. I hope to go abroad to further the education.

B: I am working as an assistant movie producer and I have participated in many world-class movies including many Jackie Chan movies and I like my job very much. And I want to improve my English so I take the IELTS test.

考生在回答第一个问题的时候要表现得很有自信，给出的答案要内容充分，把学习和工作的大致内容说清楚，并且连带说明参加雅思考试的原因。

从这个常规问题开始就进入到考试的正轨上来了，雅思口语考试的常规考题也就源源不断陆续出现了。如果考生是学生的话，那么考官会问出以下一些类别的问题：

总体描述考生自己的学习和专业。

What subject(s) are you studying?

Why did you choose that subject?

(For high school) Why did you choose those subjects?

Have you always wanted to study _____ (your subject)?

What are the most popular subjects in China?

What have you been studying in the past year?

在回答这种类型的题目的时候，考生的重点在于知道自己所学科目或者专业的英文表达方式，学这个科目或者专业的原因，在说原因的时候，要涉及以下几个方面：

Related to future job.

跟将来职业相关。

Related to your interest.

跟自身兴趣爱好相关。

Related to specific courses.

联系具体学习的课程内容来说，比如英语、数学、哲学和历史等，并且说明是否觉得这些课程对自己有帮助。

Related to world economy and culture.

联系世界经济和文化。如果考生要得到高分，那么他在说自己专业或者课程的时候就要涉及国际化内容，比如为文化交流的目的而学习，或者迫于世界经济发展的趋势的压力而学习。

另外考生还要注意考官问题中的时态，在回答的时候也要注意时态的相应变化。

描述考生自己的学校。

What school (or university) do you go to?

(Similar to above) Where do you study?

Why did you choose that university (or school)?

How is your school (or university)?

Which is the best university in your country (or city)?

在描述大学或者中学的过程中，考生的内容要涉及以下几个方面：

- ☆ 大学的名字和位置以及大学的知名度；
- ☆ 大学里的学生人数；
- ☆ 大学里的老师以及教授的好坏；
- ☆ 大学中的教材以及是否喜欢；
- ☆ 大学中的一些设施和教学专业楼。

如果考生的回答能够涉及以上内容，那么考试的时候该考生就不会出现无话可说或者语无伦次的情况。因此，雅思口语考生的分数高低是取决于回答的内容而不仅仅是英语的好坏。

以下是一些相关问题的 Sample Answer。

1. Are you a student or do you work?

Sample Answer: I am a student. At the moment I am studying at JiaoTong University.

2. What subjects did you study at high school?

Sample Answer: I studied up to nine subjects at that time, including Chinese, Math, English, and some other nature science subjects like Geography and Biology. Among so many subjects, I like Math best and I did it well. You know, usually boys are more interested in scientific subjects and I am no exception.

3. What major will you choose if you study abroad?

Sample Answer:

A: I haven't decided yet. I will first go to a language school for a ten-month language study, and after that, try to choose a university and my major. I like architecture, so probably I will study something about architecture design.

B: I am going to study education when I am abroad. My major for undergraduate is education. I have learned it for four years and have got a fairly good understanding. I just want to further my study in this field to know more and research more, which will definitely help me with my future career.

4. Which country do you plan to go to?

Sample Answer:

A: I would like to choose England. You know, England has a good reputation for its integrated education system and its wonderful educational quality. I think the law course is its strength and therefore I choose to study law there.

B: I plan to go to Australia. Australia is a country with very warm weather. This is the main reason that I have chosen this country. In addition, the social welfare of the people there is very good. That is also attractive.

5. What do you look for in a university?

Sample Answer: I think there is a lot for me to consider when I make this choice. First, I'd see the courses the university offers; see if they are good for me, including the program, the faculty etc. Then I look at the accommodation, I plan to live on campus, so living conditions and the food are my big concerns. Finally, I'll see what the weather is like there. I don't think I will choose a too cold or too hot place to stay in.

6. What do you think of the training you receive in the university?

Sample Answer: I think most of my courses will be helpful in the future. My university has tried very hard to keep up with the latest developments in our field. There were some compulsory classes that I didn't like, such as politics and history, but overall I think I was provided with a pretty good education. I don't think it is possible to learn everything you need to know in our future career, but I'm happy that studying in university has given me a good start.

另外再来看一些相关内容的高分考生的回答以及相关的词汇分析。

题目: What was your favorite subject in school?

参考回答: Honestly, recess and lunch were my favorite subjects. I'm just not that interested in abstract subjects like math or history. I'm more intrigued by subjects that are either practical or creative.

词汇: recess; abstract; intrigued

- recess: 课间休息 (同义词: time off; rest; break)
- abstract: 纯理论的; 纯概念的 (同义词: theoretical; conceptual, intangible; 反义词: concrete)
- intrigued: 好奇的; 有兴趣的 (同义词: be interested in; be curious about)

题目: What would you have preferred to study?

参考回答: I think Chinese parents are very strongly prejudiced towards professional or academic skills but I think vocational and life skills are equally important. In my opinion, it's important to be well-rounded and to relate well to other people.

词汇: prejudiced; vocational; well-rounded; relate

- prejudiced: 有偏见的 (同义词: biased, intolerant, bigoted, unfair; 反义词: unfair)
- vocational: 职业的 (同义词: occupational, professional, career)
- well-rounded: 全面的; 多方面的 (同义词: well-formed)
- relate well to: 与 ... 和睦相处

题目: What are the most important skills in modern China?

参考回答: Computer skills are obviously invaluable for everyone nowadays. Also, competence in several languages and people skills would be at the top of my list. And I think the ability to handle money shrewdly is also key.

词汇: competence; people skills; shrewdly

- competence: 能力; 技能 (同义词: capability, ability, skill, aptitude, proficiency, expertise; 反义词: inability)
- people skills: 人际交往技巧
- shrewdly: 精明地; 敏锐地 (同义词: astutely, cannily, craftily, sensibly; 反义词: naively)

题目: Do you think overseas experience will make it easier to find a job in China?

参考回答: That was very true in the past. But nowadays, more and more families have the means to send their kids overseas to study so the competition is stiffer. English proficiency is a big plus but many other skills that are applicable overseas may not be transferable to the local Chinese market.

词汇: means; stiffer; transferable

- means: 手段; 方法 (同义词: way, method, process, channel)
- stiff: 艰难的; 严格的 (同义词: rigid, firm, inflexible, hard; 反义词limp)
- applicable: 适合的; 适用的 (同义词: appropriate, valid, related, relevant; 反义词: unrelated)
- transferable: 可转移的 (同义词: moveable, transportable, handy, convenient, manageable; 反义词: fixed)

如果参加雅思口语考试的考生已经工作了, 那么考官会问一些和工作有关的问题。另外即使是学生, 考生也会有可能被问到将来工作的问题, 所以大家要了解雅思口语考试真题中和工作相关的有哪些题目。

总体描述考生自己的工作。

What job (or what work) do you do?

Why did you choose that job (or that kind of work)?

(Similar to above) Why did you choose to do that kind of work?

Have you always wanted to be a _____ (your job)?

What qualifications do you need for that work?

What do you do (in a typical day) at work?

(Similar to above) What are the main tasks that you do at work?

(Similar to above) What are your (main) responsibilities at work?

Is your job related to what you studied in university?

What have you been doing at work in the past year?

跟学习方面的描述相同, 在描述工作内容的时候要注意涉及以下几个方面:

☆ 工作职位的英文表达方式

☆ 工作的公司名字和工作的年限

☆ 工作所包含的具体内容是什么

☆ 为什么要选择这个工作, 其中应该说到: 跟薪酬相关, 跟兴趣相关, 跟大学所学专业相关, 跟出国以后从事职业相关。

在回答这部分的时候, 考生要注意内容越详细越好。

有关工作喜好以及换工作的内容。

Do you like (or enjoy) your job (or your work)?

(Similar to above) How do you like your current job?

(Similar to above) Is your job (or your work) very important to you?

Would you say it's a good job?

What's the best thing about your job?

Do you think your job is good for (or suitable for) a woman?

Would you like to change your job?

What other job do you think you would enjoy, apart from your present job?

What jobs are most popular (among young people) in your country?

其实这个部分的考题是跟前一部分相关的，问题也就是觉得自己的工作好不好及其原因。考生在回答此类题目说明工作好坏及其原因的时候要考虑以下几方面：

☆ Pay 薪酬

☆ Personal Relationship 人际关系

☆ Working Environment 工作环境

☆ Difficulty 工作难易程度

☆ Satisfaction 工作满意度

如果考生能够把以上内容结合得很好地说出来，那么考官就会觉得考生思路非常清晰，会给考官留下比较好的印象，为得高分打下良好的基础。

接下来看一下与工作相关的问题的Sample Answer。

1. Are you a student or do you work?

*Sample Answer:***A:** I currently work in an international forwarding company as Key Account Manager.**B:** Well, I am a full-time student at the moment and I haven't worked yet.**C:** I am a housewife and I don't work outside. I take care of the whole family.

2. What are your main responsibilities at work?

Sample Answer: As a Marketing Manager, I work to develop a strategic plan for the line of business, building on available skills of the organization to facilitate the transition to an e-business vendor and create promotional materials to market programs.

3. Do you want to change your job?

*Sample Answer:***A:** I don't think I will change my job. Generally, I'm pretty satisfied with my current job. Good position, high pay and more important, promising future. The position offers a lot of opportunities for studying new ideas and skills.**B:** Yes. The company I am with now is kind of lags behind the times in many ways, such as the technology and management. I want to work in a place where they teach new skills and offer better prospects of employee's self-development.

除了工作和学习的基本信息外，Home也是考官经常问到的基本信息。Home包含了三个方面的考试点：Hometown（家乡），Accommodation（家庭的住宅情况）和Neighbour（邻居）。首先来关注Hometown的相关真题及回答思路。

家乡的地点

☆ Where do you come from?

☆ Where do you live at the moment?

回答这个问题的时候除了要注意把城市的名字说清楚之外，还要说明这个城市在中国所处的位置，人口多少，是否喜欢这个城市，城市中的交通、教育和娱乐等一系列的相关信息。

关于考生自己的家乡的总体信息。

What's that place like?

Tell me something about your hometown.

What would you recommend a tourist see in your hometown?

Is that a big city or a small town (or a village in the countryside)?

Do you prefer to live in a big city or in the countryside?

What benefits are there from living in a big city?

在准备这些题目的时候要注意把家乡最有特色的东西说出来，包括建筑、人们的友好程度、风景名胜等有具体内容的东西。而且还要注意雅思口语考试考官常问的问题“Do you prefer to live in a big city or in the countryside?”。这个问题有点像Part 3的风格的问题，但是在Part 1考生就要准备好回答这样类型的题目，我建议从以下几个方面来说：

★空气质量

★教育普及

★基础设施（医院、学校等）

★生活方式

★交通便利

★人际关系

★生存压力

如果考生具备上面7个切入点，那么有关城乡差别的话题就会很好掌控。

来看这个话题中的其他真题：

家乡类问题中所牵涉的一般过去时和过去完成时。

How long have you been living there / here?

Did your family ever move away from the place you were born? (Why? / Why not?)

(Similar to above) Has your family always lived in that city / town?

Has your hometown changed much in the past few years? (e.g. the past 10 to 50 years)

Compared to the past, would you say your hometown today is more suitable for living in, or less suitable?

考生在回答此类题目的时候要特别注意语法的使用，也就是过去时态和现在时态结合使用，至于内容上，也就是刚刚所提到的几个方面，即交通、教育和生活方式等。

还有以下一些：

关于家乡话题的将来展望以及交通问题。

Do you plan to live there / here for a long time?

Have you ever thought about moving to live somewhere else? (Why? / Why not?)

What (other) city would you like to live in (in the future)?

What's the traffic situation like in your hometown?

(Similar to above) Is transportation very convenient in your hometown?

(Similar to above) Is transportation very convenient around where you live?

相对于过去时而言，对将来时的使用考生应该有比较好的掌控力，而在内容上这个部分的真题也不难，除了前面所讲的一些内容之外还应加上留学以后是否回到家乡或者留在国外工作的相关内容。

接下来大家来看有关Accommodation（家庭的住宅情况）的相关真题。

Do you live in a house or a flat?

What are the benefits (or advantages) of living in a flat / house?

How are the rooms in your house decorated?

What's your favourite room in your home? (Why?)

How do you think your home (your house or your flat) could be improved?

If you could change one thing in your apartment, what would it be?

有关a house or a flat的问题是雅思口语考试经常考到的题目。对于这个问题，考生主要要了解house和flat的区别：house就是指一幢大房子，比如别墅这种类型的；而flat就是指高楼里面的套房包括卧室和客厅组成的单元。了解了两者的区别以后就要注意真题中问到的两者的优势，包括：

House的优势：空间大，房间多，私人空间多，不同功能的房间，比如书房、客厅、健身房、餐厅和影音室，还有附属设施，比如花园。

Flat的优势：价格便宜，交通便利，大多数的地点在市中心，离工作地点或者学校距离较近等。

由此可见，思路组织是非常重要的，如果考生有以上的思路，回答起来会非常流畅。

这个板块的另外一个问题是房间的装饰和如何改善居住的地方，对于这方面问题，考生的回答不用太过于专业，而是一些生活类内容的直接表达就可以。

房间的装饰：木制的家具、油画、电器设备、窗帘、房间的颜色等几个方面。

如何改善居住的地方：种植更多的植物，比如花朵之类的，更换房间的颜色，购买更多古典的或者现代的家具，设置专门用途的房间，比如书房等几个方面。



Neighbour也是Home类别话题中一个特殊的小板块，雅思口语考官对于这个部分也有相关的具体问题，先来看一下有关Neighbour的真题。

Do you know your neighbours?

Do you think it's necessary to know your neighbours?

What do you think of your neighbours?

How do you get along with your neighbours?

How often do you talk to (or see) your neighbours?

Do you prefer to have young people as your neighbours, or old people?

Do you think it's important to have a good relationship with your neighbours?

What are the benefits of having good relationships with one's neighbours?

What sorts of problems (conflicts) can people have with their neighbours?

In what ways can neighbours help each other?

来从以下两个方面入手：

认识邻居的必要性：原因包括人际关系的改善，生活中的互相帮助，如老年人的照顾，儿童的照顾，发生疾病时的互相帮助等。

邻居是老年人好还是年轻人好：老年人做邻居的好处是生活经验丰富，有问题可以及时请教。年轻人做邻居的好处是生活方式和兴趣爱好相同，比较容易相处。

如果考生在思路上把握这两个方面就能应付以上的所有问题了。

第2节 Part 1 媒体交流类口语考题真题荟萃

雅思口语考试Part 1媒体交流类口语考题包含五大测试点: Computer, Newspaper and Magazine, Advertisements, Writing以及Language。从相关的考试真题来看, 这些方面都是跟考生的学习和工作生活直接相关的, 因此, 这些题目在思路组织上的难度并不是很高, 下面就来一一分析这五大主题的真题及相关答题思路。

媒体交流类第一大主题Computer真题集锦:

Do you use computers very much?

When did you start using computers?

What was your impression when you used a computer the first time?

How did you learn to use a computer?

What do you use computers for?

What do you think are the benefits of (using) a computer?

How has using computers changed people?

How has using computers changed people's lives?

Do you think a computer can give you better access to knowledge?

Do you play computer games?

How often do you play computer games?

What do you do when your computer has problems?

前四个问题相对而言非常简单, 而从第五个问题开始内容就要非常充分, 要注重细节。What do you use computers for? 这个问题要涉及以下几个方面:

学术方面: 完成作业、递交作业、撰写论文、网络课程、设计讲义、视频制作和电子书阅读等。

生活娱乐方面: 网上购物、网络游戏、在线电影等。

How has using computers changed people?和How has using computers changed people's lives?这两个问题同样需要考生给出具体的例子来说明电脑如何改变人和人的生活。



- ☆ 人们面对面的交流减少了，更倾向于网上交流。
- ☆ 工作效率和学习效率大幅度提高，大大加快人们的工作节奏和生活节奏。
- ☆ 人们的娱乐方式变多了。
- ☆ 更多地了解国外文化。

从以上四个方面考虑能够充分回答上面两个问题。后面几个有关电脑游戏的问题想必各位考生比较熟悉，这里就不做过多阐述了。

媒体交流类第二大主题Newspaper and Magazine真题集锦：

Do you like reading magazines and / or newspapers?
What kinds of (types of) magazines (or newspapers) do you like to read?
Which do you prefer, reading magazines or newspapers?
What parts of a newspaper do you prefer to read?
What kinds of articles do you like to read?
Have you ever read a foreign newspaper (or magazine)?
Have you ever read any newspapers or magazines in a foreign language?
Do you think reading magazines and newspapers in a foreign language is useful?
Do you think reading foreign magazines and newspapers can help you learn a new language?

对于newspaper而言，大家首先要了解的是The Sections of a Newspaper报纸的各个版块。

The following are the main sections that typical newspapers have.

- The Local News Section 当地新闻版
- The International News Section 国际新闻版
- The Editorial Section 社论版
- Letters to the Editor 写给编辑的信
- The Business Section 经济版
- The Entertainment Section 娱乐版
- The Sports Section 体育版
- The Classified Advertisements Section 分类广告区
- The Comics (Comic Strips) 漫画区

另外针对Which do you prefer, reading magazines or newspapers?这个问题,大家要了解Newspaper和Magazine的区别:

出版周期:报纸是每日出版,杂志是每周或者每月出版。

内容更新程度:报纸内容更新快,杂志内容更新慢。

内容广泛程度:报纸内容百花齐放,杂志内容专业程度高,比如时尚类、电脑类和体育类等。

对于Do you think reading foreign magazines and newspapers can help you learn a new language?这个问题大多数考生的回答应该是肯定的,答案的详细说明部分应该包括:

词汇和语法的学习,国外文化的学习和写作结构的学习等三方面。

另外,大家对杂志类型的英文表达方式要全面了解。

Types of Magazines 杂志类型

There are magazines for almost every topic of interest, whether a sport, hobby, general interest or a career interest.

杂志的主题包括了几乎所有的兴趣类型,不论是体育、业余爱好、大众化兴趣或是与职业有关的兴趣。

- sports magazines (e.g. Basketball, football, golf magazines) 体育杂志(如篮球、足球、高尔夫杂志)

- tabloid magazines (Sensationalized and often exaggerated or untrue articles and gossip about celebrities. This magazine genre also includes magazines with unusual or sensationalized human-interest stories.) 八卦杂志(常常被炒作和夸大,或是虚假的关于名人的文章和小道消息。一些包含不寻常的、炒作的及能引起读者共鸣或同情的报道的杂志也属于这一类型。)

- movie magazines (Stories and reviews about the latest films) 电影杂志(关于最新电影的故事和影评)

- music and entertainment magazines (Articles about pop music and movies and entertainment celebrities) 音乐娱乐杂志(关于流行音乐、电影和娱乐明星的文章)

- news and current events magazines (News, news analysis and opinion pieces) 时事新闻杂志(新闻、新闻分析和评论)

- women's magazines (Topics of general interest to women, including parenting, family, home, health, beauty and



fashion, career and relationship advice, and short stories) 女性杂志 (女性感兴趣的话题, 包括养育子女、家庭、住宅、健康、美容时尚、对职业生涯和人际关系的建议以及短篇故事)

- beauty and fashion magazines (e.g. *Vogue*. Articles and many photographs on fashion and beauty for women) 美容时尚杂志 (如 *Vogue* 杂志, 其中有许多关于女性时尚及美容的文章和图片)

- teen magazines (Usually for teenage girls—general interest magazines for teenagers with topics such as romantic short stories, romance advice, fashion and beauty advice, entertainment etc.) 少儿杂志 (对象一般为少女, 包括青少年感兴趣的话题, 如浪漫短篇小说、情感建议、美容时尚建议及娱乐等)

- men's magazines (Short stories and articles of interest to (usually) young men, including pictures of pretty girls) 男性杂志 (一般为年轻男士感兴趣的短篇小说和文章, 也包括漂亮女孩的图片)

- home and gardening magazines (Articles about buying a home, home decoration, home maintenance, gardening etc.) 家居园艺杂志 (关于购房、家居装潢、家居保养、园艺等的一些文章)

- car magazines 汽车杂志

- military magazines (Articles and stories about military history, military equipment and weaponry) 军事杂志 (关于军事历史、军事装备和武器的文章及故事)

- hobbyist magazines (e.g. Stamp collecting, antiques, photography, different arts and crafts, pets, different games...) 爱好者杂志 (如集邮、古董、摄影、各种工艺美术、宠物及各种游戏杂志)

- computer magazines (Articles about new developments and products in the world of computers) 计算机杂志 (关于计算机界的最新发展和创造的文章)

- computer game magazines 电脑游戏杂志

- business and money magazines (Articles about personal money management, investing, the stock market etc.) 商务理财杂志 (有关个人理财、投资及股票市场等的文章)

- puzzle magazines (With puzzles to solve) 益智杂志 (解谜)

- humor magazines (Jokes, funny cartoons, and humorous short stories) 幽默杂志 (笑话、趣味卡通以及一些诙谐的短篇故事)

- travel magazines (Articles about interesting places to visit) 旅游杂志 (关于有意思的旅游景点)

- science and nature magazines (e.g. *National Geographic*) 科学与自然杂志 (如国家地理杂志)

- health and fitness magazines 健康杂志
- popular psychology magazines (Self-help articles and articles on “pop psychology” topics) 大众心理学杂志（关于自助和现代心理学主题的文章）
- literary magazines (Short stories, poetry, reviews of new books, etc.) 文学杂志（短篇小说、诗歌、最新书评等）
- short story magazines (Various short stories to read. Different genres exist, e.g. mystery stories, romance stories, crime stories, science fiction stories...) 短篇故事杂志（包含各种各样的短篇故事。包括不同的文学流派，如怪诞小说、爱情小说、犯罪小说、科幻小说等）
- political magazines (Usually political analysis and opinion rather than objective political news) 政治杂志（通常包含政治分析和主张，而不是客观的政治新闻）
- scholarly magazines (Specialized magazines for academics in different subjects) 学术杂志（关于不同学术科目的专业杂志）

媒体交流类第三大主题Advertisements真题集锦：

Are there many advertisements in your country?

What are the various places where we see advertisements?

Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?

Do you like advertisements?

Do you think there are too many advertisements? (in society / on TV / in magazines and newspapers / on the street)

What kind of advertisement do you like the most?

Do advertisements influence your choice about what to buy?

Do you prefer advertisements on TV or those in magazines?

What sorts of advertisements leave the deepest impression on people?

Do you think advertising plays a very important role in today's world?

Do you think advertising is an important part of life?

What do you think about the developments in advertising in China today?

广告类题目是雅思口语考试的主流考题，由于广告跟人们的生活息息相关，因此考生对这类题目也是比较容易处理的。下面通过一些例子来分析以下答题技巧和相关词汇：

题目: What kind of advertisements are common in China?

参考回答: I'd say advertising is ubiquitous these days. We have TV adverts, billboards, radio promotions, bus posters, flyers and even spam e-mails and SMSs. Sometimes it seems like there's no escaping for advertising in China!

词汇: ubiquitous; billboards; spam; there's no escaping

- ubiquitous: 无处不在的(同义词: everywhere, omnipresent, ever-present)
- billboard: 广告牌
- spam: 垃圾(邮件)(同义词: junk mail)
- there's no escaping: 无可避免

题目: How does advertising influence our life?

参考回答: Undeniably, advertising has a profound influence on our lives, whether welcome or unwelcome. Many people see advertising as intrusive, a kind of propaganda or brainwashing. But many of our most popular forms of entertainment could not exist without sponsorship in the form of advertising.

词汇: profound influence; intrusive; propaganda; sponsorship

- profound influence: 深远的影响(同义词: deep impact / effect; 反义词: superficial effect)
- intrusive: 干涉的; 打扰的(同义词: invasive, disturbing, meddling, interfering)
- propaganda: 宣传(同义词: promotion, campaign)
- sponsorship: 赞助

题目: Does advertising play a positive or negative role in society?

参考回答: I think advertising is really a two-sided coin. Inevitably, when it is done badly or too often, it can be obnoxious. But some advertisements are actually really clever and constitute their own form of entertainment.

词汇: two-sided coin; inevitably; obnoxious; constitute

- a two-sided coin: 具有两面性的事物; 双刃剑
- inevitably: 不可避免地(同义词: unavoidably, inexorably, inescapably, without doubt, certainly)
- obnoxious: 可憎的; 讨厌的(同义词: loathsome, hateful, horrible, intolerable, detestable, unbearable, repellent; 反义词: nice)

constitute: 组成; 形成(同义词: comprise, make up, form, compose)

题目: What do you think is the ideal medium for advertising?

参考回答: It's complicated because on the one hand you want something very conspicuous placed where many people will see it, but on the other hand the most effective advertising is often subconscious. I think product placements in movies are a good compromise.

词汇: conspicuous; subconscious; product placements; compromise

- conspicuous: 显著的; 显眼的(同义词: obvious, noticeable, eye-catching, striking, prominent, evident, clear, patent; 反义词: inconspicuous)
- subconscious: 下意识的; 潜意识的(同义词: subliminal, unconscious, intuitive, unintentional, involuntary; 反义词: deliberate)
- product placements: (电影、电视节目中的)植入式广告
- compromise: 折中办法(同义词: concession, cooperation, negotiation; 反义词: confrontation)

以上是一些词汇和句型的补充以及参考答案。在真题当中还有哪些题目较难呢?大家来分析一下:

☆ Are there many advertisements in your country?

☆ What are the various places where we see advertisements?

☆ Why do you think there are so many advertisements now?

这三道题目在回答的时候不能只给出简单答案,一定注意内容要详细,比如第一题在确认广告多的同时要说明广告有哪些类型,在哪里可以看到广告(比如电视、电影、报刊和网络等)。这样一来,考生就把第二题也回答完了,考官也就不会再问第二个问题了。所以要注意一点,考生回答的内容越多、越丰富,考官问的问题就越少,主动权也就掌握在考生手中了。

而对于第三个问题,广告多的原因,则要联系经济的发展、竞争激烈方面展开。

另外一个比较难回答的题目是Do you prefer advertisements on TV or those in magazines?对于这个问题,考生可以从广告的动态静态层面、声音图像效果层面以及接触频率三个方面来讨论。

而另外两个问题:

☆ Do you think advertising plays a very important role in today's world?

☆ Do you think advertising is an important part of life?

是雅思口语考试Part 1广告类话题中最难的了。广告的重要性体现在以下几个方面:

☆ 广告已经成为电视和电影一样的生活中的视觉艺术品,所以不可缺少。

☆ 广告是人们获取最新商品信息的重要来源。

☆ 广告也是人们谈论明星的一个媒介，因为大多数广告是由大牌明星出演的。

从以上的三个方面谈论广告的重要性考生可以得到高分。

关于广告的问题还会延伸到以下的一些题目：

1. How do people know new products?

Sample Answer: People know new products mainly through advertisements. Ads are everywhere in our life. When you watch TV or listen to the radio, you find ads between programs, especially TV commercials. Ads are also found in subways and buses.

2. What do you think of advertising in sports and entertainment events?

Sample Answer: There are advantages and disadvantages to this issue. On one hand, having sports events needs a great deal of money, for example, the venues and the facilities, which cannot be sponsored by the government alone. On the other hand, when we allow advertisements in sports events, the sports events will be probably under the control of big companies, which might result in monopoly in some way.

另外大家还要学习一些表达广告类型的专业词汇。

Types of Advertising 广告类型

- TV and radio advertisements (= TV and radio commercials) 电视广播广告
- newspaper and magazine ads (including the classified ads) 报纸杂志广告 (包括分类广告)
- billboards (next to main roads, railway lines, on subway station walls etc.) 户外看板，广告牌 (主要道路、铁路、地铁站墙壁上的广告等)
- cell-phone text messages 手机短信
- flyers and handouts (e.g. on the street, put into letterboxes etc.) 宣传单和小册子 (如在街上发的或投递到信箱中的等)
- Internet advertisements (e.g. pop-up ads) 网络广告 (如进入某网站时，会自动出现的广告)
- posters (e.g. wall posters, bus stop posters) 海报 (如墙上贴的海报、公交车站的海报)

Visible Logos 可见商标

- on professional athletes' clothing 在职业运动员的服装上
- on signs in front of shops etc. 在商店前的招牌上
- on T-shirts, hats, jackets and other clothing 在T恤衫、帽子、夹克衫和其他服装上
- on handbags and other accessories 在手提包和其他配件上
- on Formula 1 cars 在F1赛车上
- on racing yachts 在赛艇上
- on hot-air balloons 在热气球上

Advertisements in Other Prominent Places 其他显著位置的广告

- on the side of buses and trains 在汽车和火车的侧面
- cinema advertising 电影院广告
- sports stadium advertising 体育馆广告

媒体交流类第四大主题Writing真题集锦:

At work or in your studies, do you often write things?

What do you usually write?

Do you like writing to people?

How often do you send e-mails?

What are your main reasons for using e-mails?

Do you like to send e-mails?

Do you usually write by hand or write using the computer (or a typewriter or word-processor)?

Nowadays, how do most people write things?

Do you think computers might one day replace handwriting?

When do children begin to write in your country?

When did you start to learn how to write?

How did you learn to write?

Do you think handwriting is still important nowadays?

What impression does a person's handwriting have on other people?

How can children today improve (or practise) their handwriting?

Do you like to write letters?

Which do you prefer to write, emails or letters?

What are the differences between emails and letters?

Which do you prefer to write, letters or emails? (Why?)

Which do you think is easier to write, a letter or an email?

What are the advantages of emails (compared to letters)?

Do you think there are any (possible) negative points about emails?

Do you prefer to receive a phone call or a letter?

Which do you prefer, to write a letter, write an email or make a phone call?

Writing话题中的主要的问题集中在写传统信件和写电子邮件上面, 大多数的题目都是和这个有关, 考生在比较这两者的时候要注意比较的方面, 大致包括以下几个:

☆ 投递和收取的速度

☆ 价格

☆ 便利程度

☆ 正式程度

☆ 场合和目的

☆ 信件的类型

大家接下来看几道相关题目的回答以及语言点的扩充。

题目：How do you prefer to keep in touch with your friends?

参考回答：If possible, I like to communicate face-to-face, maybe get together for a coffee or hang out. But if it's a long-distance relationship, it's more difficult. Then we have to keep in touch by e-mails, snail mails or phone calls.

词汇：face-to-face; hang out; long-distance relationship; snail mail

- face-to-face: 面对面
- hang out: 闲荡；厮混（同义词：go around, spend time with）
- long-distance relationship: 远距离关系
- snail mail: 蜗牛邮件；传统邮件

题目：Do you have a mobile phone? What kinds of features does it have?

参考回答：Of course. I think mobile phones are indispensable for Chinese people today. Many people don't even have landlines anymore. My mobile phone has a lot of great features like caller ID, text-messaging, games, a digital camera and even Internet access.

词汇：indispensable; landlines; caller ID

- indispensable: 不可或缺的（同义词：necessary, essential, important, crucial; 反义词：petty, unimportant）
- landline: 传统电话
- caller ID: 来电显示

题目：Do you prefer to write letters, send e-mails or call someone?

参考回答：It depends on what kind of message it is and also how urgent. I'll call someone if I need an answer right away. If I want to send something like an invitation or congratulations but I don't want to disturb anyone, I'll send an e-mail. And some very serious or formal messages, like condolences on a death, I will take the time to write a letter because I think it's more considerate.

词汇: urgent; disturb; condolences

- urgent: 紧急的 (同义词: vital, pressing, imperative, critical; 反义词: trivial)
- disturb: 打扰; 扰乱 (同义词: upset, bother, perturb, agitate, interrupt, spoil)
- condolence: 吊唁; 哀悼 (同义词: sympathy, commiseration)

题目: Do you often chat online?

参考回答: Not as much as I used to. When I was in university, I had a lot of time to go on BBSs and post my opinions. But so many of the threads were just people flaming each other. And now I don't have so much free time for chatting. I just IM people at work.

词汇: post; threads; flaming; IM

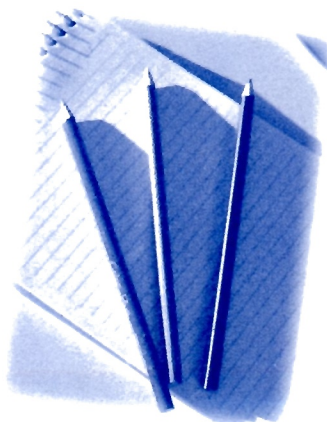
- post: 网上留言 (同义词: message)
- thread: 帖子 (同义词: article)
- flame: 网络争论 (同义词: debate, argument, discussion)
- IM: (instant messaging) 发送即时信息

通过以上几个例子可以发现雅思口语中词汇的掌握还是非常关键的, 如果考生的词汇量不足, 那么很多问题在回答的时候将是无话可说。

以下是一些常见的和Letters相关的词汇:

Letters

- business letters 商务信函
- personal letters 个人信函
- postcards 明信片
- love letters 情书
- spam 垃圾邮件
- an attachment 附件
- to download 下载
- a computer virus 电脑病毒
- to keep in touch with someone 和某人保持联系
- to hear from someone 收到某人的来信



媒体交流类第五大主题Language真题集锦:

What language do you usually speak?

What foreign languages have you studied (or learned)?

Why did you choose to study that language?

How did you learn that language?

Would you say it's a difficult language to learn?

How long have you been learning that language?

What language would you like to learn (if you had the opportunity)? (Why?)

语言类话题的内容不多，回答也比较简单，这里我们做简要分析。

Why did you choose to study that language?这道题目在回答的时候主要理由要充分，例子要具体。具体的理由可以包括：

☆ 学习交流用途

☆ 了解外国文化

☆ 为留学和国外工作做准备

以及大多数同学都会说到的“为了能够看懂好莱坞电影和美剧，所以我要学英语！”

在备考雅思口语Part 1的过程中，要注重生活实例的应用，否则列举一些理由空谈、内容非常空洞的例子，分数就不会高。

第3节 Part 1日常生活类口语考题真题荟萃

雅思口语考试Part 1日常生活类的话题是考生接触最多的内容，大多数考生能够流利自如地回答这部分的考题，在日常生活类的口语题目中包括Flowers, Weather, Shopping, Clothes, Time, Friends, Noise和Daily Routine八大类内容。在这个章节当中，大家同样会见到雅思口语考试的真题，并且学到答题思路，学到一些基本的语言表达方式从而能够完全应付雅思口语考试Part 1中考官的问题。

首先大家来关注以下Flowers的相关真题：

Do you like flowers?

Are flowers important in your culture?

Do flowers have special meaning in your culture?

What's your favourite flower?

On what occasions are flowers important?

Do you ever give flowers to other people? (If yes, who and why?)

When was the last occasion that you bought flowers for someone?

Where did you buy these flowers?

Where do (can) people buy flowers?

When was the last time you gave flowers to someone?

Do you like to have flowers in your home?

Do you (ever) grow flowers at home? (Give details)

Do many people in your country grow flowers at home?

Do old people in China like gardening?

雅思口语考生刚刚接触这个话题的时候会感到很惊讶，怎么会谈论花的话题呢，而且问题还这么刁钻，比如花的特殊意义，是不是在家里养花等题目，很多考生会感到不知所措。先来看一下下一个考生的回答，大家对这个话题就会有些思路。



Question: Which flowers have a special meaning in China?

Tips: 列举一些有特殊含义的花卉，并简要阐述它们的含义。

Answer: In China, we consider the **peony** (牡丹花) a symbol of good fortune and the **plum blossom** (梅花) represents iron will and elegance. Another popular flower, the **daffodil / narcissus** (水仙花), symbolizes **nobility** (高尚; 崇高) but also a little arrogance for Chinese people.

考生在回答花的特殊含义的时候，要特别关注一些常见的花名，以防万一。

除了花的特殊意义这道题目之外，其他题目都是比较容易回答的，大家来简单分析一下。

☆ On what occasions are flowers important?

☆ Do you ever give flowers to other people? (If yes, who and why?)

☆ When was the last occasion that you bought flowers for someone?

有关送花的理由和送花的场合的，考生要提到婚礼、约会、看望病人，各种节日比如圣诞、母亲节、情人节等各种场合。

Do you like to have flowers in your home?

Do you (ever) grow flowers at home? (Give details)

Do many people in your country grow flowers at home?

Do old people in China like gardening?

这四个问题都是关于家里种花和园艺的问题。这些问题都是以一般疑问句形式出现的，在回答的时候要注意先回答YES or NO，然后再给出具体的理由和例子，否则将会被扣分！

在回答这些问题的时候，如果答案是肯定的，那么理由则包括：

☆ 休闲，缓解压力。

☆ 植物和花朵可以增添家里的色彩，作为一种装饰作用。

☆ 植物还可以提供家中足够的氧气。

☆ 种植植物和花也是一种健身。

从我给出的这些idea可以看出，雅思口语考试的时候，考生一定要有发散性思维才能有足够的内容表达，不只是英语好就可以了。

Flower主题在雅思口语考试中也会扩充成Garden的主题，接下来看看Garden话题的问题方式和解答技巧。

题目: Do many people in China have a garden of their own?

参考回答: Not really. Because the population density of Chinese cities is very high and most people live in apartment complexes, private gardens aren't so common. But some people have balconies and garden as a hobby. And in the countryside, many people have vegetable gardens.

词汇: population density; apartment complexes; balconies

- population density: 人口密度 (同义词: number of people, number of residents)
- apartment complex: 综合住宅大楼 (同义词: apartment block)
- balcony: 阳台 (同义词: terrace, veranda)

题目: What do people do in the garden?

参考回答: It depends on their age. Young children enjoy the playground and can run around on the jungle gym. People in their twenties and thirties enjoy strolling in the garden with their romantic interests. And older people can meditate or do tai chi in the peaceful surroundings.

词汇: playground; jungle gym; strolling; meditate

- playground: 游乐场 (同义词: recreational area)
- jungle gym: 供儿童攀缘用的大铁架
- stroll: 散步; 漫步 (同义词: leisurely walk, amble, saunter, wander)
- meditate: 默想; 冥想 (同义词: contemplate, ponder, think, mull over, reflect)

题目: Why do you think people like gardens?

参考回答: Gardens are one of the few places where people can commune with nature, particularly in big cities. Surrounded by fresh air, birdsong and greenery, people can forget their troubles for a while.

词汇: commune with nature; birdsong; greenery

- commune with nature: 与大自然无言地交流
- greenery: 绿树, 绿色植物 (同义词: foliage, vegetation, trees, plants, leaves, grass)
- birdsong: 悦耳的鸟鸣

题目: What would you like to see in a garden or park?

参考回答: Some parks are trying to attract more visitors by adding carnival rides. But in more traditional parks, I think it's enough to offer regular concerts and shows, such as the permanent bonsai exhibit in the botanical gardens or the chrysanthemum festival every September.

词汇: carnival rides; bonsai; botanical gardens; chrysanthemum

- carnival ride: 游乐场中的娱乐装置 (同义词: recreational facilities)
- bonsai: 盆栽
- botanical garden: 植物园
- chrysanthemum: 菊花

接下来关注日常生活类第二大主题Weather，在这个主题中有以下这些真题：

What's the weather like today?

What's the weather (usually) like in your hometown?

What changes are there between the different seasons in your country?

What's your favourite season? (Why?)

(Similar to above, but different) What's your favourite weather? (Why?)

(Similar to above) What sort of weather do you like?

What sort of weather do you least like?

Do you like snow? (Why?)

Do you usually pay attention to the weather forecast?

Does the weather ever affect what you do?

Do you think the weather can affect people's moods?

(If you are doing the test far from your hometown) Compare the weather in your hometown and the weather here.

In China, are there ever any problems caused by the weather?

Would you prefer to live in a place that has just one warm season that lasts the whole year or a place with different seasons?

Do you (or do people in China) do the same things in different seasons of the year?

Do people (in China) play the same sports in different seasons of the year?

天气气候类话题是雅思口语考试长盛不衰的话题之一，对于这个话题而言，考生比较陌生的是有关于这类话题的答题方式，下面来看一些相关的Sample Answer来学习一下如何答题。

1. Which season do you dislike the most and why?

Sample Answer: I have to say I'm not a big fan of winter. Some people think it's cozy to wrap yourself in three blankets, but I hate it when I can't stop shivering. And the dry air gives me chapped lips. I can't stand walking through slush to get to work and then having soggy shoes for the rest of the day. It's the worst!

2. What's your favorite kind of weather and why?

Sample Answer: To be honest I'd have to say I like weather which is a little overcast. My skin is pretty sensitive and when it's too bright, the glare from the street hurts my eyes. On the other hand, I don't like very wet or humid weather either. But I'm perfectly happy in cool, slightly cloudy weather.

3. What kinds of clothes do you wear in different seasons in your hometown?

Sample Answer: Winter in my hometown can be bitterly cold, so we make sure to bundle up in a heavy coat jumper, hat mittens and so on. Spring and autumn are rainy seasons so galoshes are a must. And in the sweltering summer heat, we strip down to shorts, T-shirts and sandals.

4. What is the weather like in your hometown?

Sample Answer: The weather in my hometown is obviously different from season to season. Spring and autumn are somewhat similar as both are humid. In summer, it is very hot and moist while when winter comes, it becomes quite cold. Sometimes, the temperature is as low as minus 10 degrees.

5. What season do you like best? What season do you dislike?

Sample Answer: Among the four seasons, I like spring best. When spring comes, the whole world is full of vital force with grass growing, trees budding, and flowers in full bloom. I like to go for an outing in spring. The season I don't like is autumn. The fallen leaves from trees pile up on the roads and streets, which bring trouble to people. The other reason is that it is always gusty during the season.

6. What climate does your country have?

Sample Answer: Well, it is hard to say. Climate varies from area to area in such a big country, China. But generally, it is cold in the northern provinces like Heilongjiang, and warm in the southern ones like Hainan Island.

7. What differences are there in lifestyle between people from south and the ones from north?

Sample Answer: There are a lot of differences between people from south and those from north, but it is hard to say exactly. Every province has different customs, just like food. Most of northern people like noodles, while many southern people like hot food, because the weather in southern area tends to be moist.

通过以上7道题目可以看出，天气气候类话题虽然题目比较简单，然而要回答好也是不容易的，需要有很丰富的背景知识和较强的遣词造句能力。

日常生活类第二大主题是Shopping，在这个主题中有以下这些真题：

Do you like (going) shopping? (Why? / Why not?)

Do you prefer shopping alone or with others?

Do you prefer to buy things yourself or to have your parents buy things for you?

What time of the day do you prefer to go shopping?

When was the last time you went shopping?

What was the most recent thing you bought (for yourself)?

Do you prefer to buy things in small shops or in big shops such as supermarkets and department stores?

Is there anything you dislike about (going) shopping?

购物类话题对于大多数考生来说不难，因为购物是生活中的一部分。考生要将以上的话题都练习一遍，其中较难的题目是：Do you prefer to buy things in small shops or in big shops such as supermarkets and department stores? 回答这道题目的时候要注重对比和比较，说明两者有缺点。

small shops: 比如convenience store，优势是24小时开门，离住宅区较近，但价格较高，选择范围有限。

big shops: 比如supermarkets and department stores，优势是商品的选择广，价格便宜，缺点是离市中心较远。

由于这道题目是Part 1的题目，因此说到以上内容就已经足够了。

大家再来看看其他题目的Sample Answer。

题目：Does shopping make you feel happy?

参考回答：Some of my friends believe in retail therapy and sometimes a shopping spree makes me feel better when I'm bored. But I also usually get buyer's remorse afterwards and wish that I had saved my money.

词汇：retail therapy; shopping spree; buyer's remorse

- retail therapy: 购物疗法
- shopping spree: 疯狂购物
- buyer's remorse: 后悔买了不需要的东西

从这道题目可见，如果考生的词汇量大对于内容的表达是非常有帮助的。

另外一些题目包括:

1. Do you like shopping? Where do you like to go shopping?

Sample Answer: I like shopping and I do most of the shopping in my family. I like to go to supermarkets to buy what I need. You know, modern supermarkets are quite advanced. We can find almost everything there. I can buy all the things on my shopping list at this one place. Besides, the shopping hour there is long, till about 10: 00 at night. They are quite thoughtful to night shoppers.

2. How do people do shopping nowadays?

Sample Answer: Uhm... in the modern society, people sometimes do not go out for shopping, for they can do it at home. Catalog shopping, television shopping, online shopping are convenient and fast.

3. What do you often buy?

Sample Answer: I like buying food and daily necessities, because I like eating and cooking. By the way, I like to find out new products at the market and consider how they can possibly make life easier.

总体来看, 购物类话题不难回答, 但是考生要联系生活实例来回答问题, 不要刻意使用难词难句而使得表达出现问题!

日常生活类第四大主题是Clothes, 在这个主题中有以下这些真题:

Do you like shopping for clothes?

When was the last time you went shopping for clothes?

Do you think men and women think the same about clothes?

What kinds of (or style of) clothes do people in your country like to wear?

What kinds of (or style of) clothes do you usually wear (or buy)?

(Similar to above) What kinds of (or style of) clothes do you like?

Do you like to try on clothes before you buy them? (Why? / Why not?)

For you, is the colour of the clothes very important when you are shopping for clothes?

Where do you think you can buy the most fashionable clothes?

Are you very interested in fashion (or clothes fashions)?

What do you think about fashion?

What do you think about fashion nowadays in your country?

Are people's ideas about fashion (or ideas about what is "fashionable") today the same as people's ideas in previous years?

Do many people (in China) follow fashion?

What are the benefits of following fashion?

雅思口语考试中时装和时尚类话题也是大多数同学比较擅长回答的方面。通过一些例子来分析以上真题。

题目：What kind of clothes are fashionable now in your country?

参考回答：Fashion, by definition, changes constantly. In China, I think people's attitudes towards clothing fads depend on their age. Young people are more affluent and want to express their individuality. Meanwhile, the older generation chooses more utilitarian clothes.

词汇：fads; affluent; individuality; utilitarian

- fads: 时尚；风尚（同义词：fashion）
- affluent: 富有的（同义词：rich, wealthy, well off, prosperous; 反义词：poor）
- individuality: 个性（同义词：independence; individualism; uniqueness, personality, distinctiveness）
- utilitarian: 实用性（同义词：useful, practical, serviceable, down-to-earth, functional, effective; 反义词：useless）

题目：What do you think of fashion?

参考回答：I'm a little bit of a clotheshorse but I try not to follow fashions too slavishly. For me, the key is to choose fashionable clothes and accessories that also let you show or hide what you want. You need to use common sense to avoid becoming a fashion victim.

词汇：clotheshorse; slavishly; accessories; fashion victim

- clotheshorse: 讲究穿着的人
- slavishly: 奴役般地
- accessory: 配饰（同义词：ornament, 包括：handbag, belt, scarf, gloves）
- fashion victim: 盲目赶时髦的人

题目：Do you think being a fashion designer could be a good job?

参考回答：I think being a fashion designer would be a challenging but interesting job. I'd need to keep up on the latest trends, select colors and fabrics, and oversee the final production of my designs. But I think it would be very rewarding to see models dressed in ensembles I designed.

词汇：trends; fabrics; ensembles

- trend: 趋势；趋向（同义词：tendency, inclination）
- fabric: 织物；衣料（同义词：cloth, material, textile）
- ensemble: 整套服饰（同义词：collection）

在讨论服装类话题或者时尚类话题的时候，一些跟服装和时尚相关的词汇是要专门学习和掌握的，同时跟购物类话题一样，时尚类话题在谈论的时候也要结合考生自己的例子来回答问题，这样会显得更加个性化。

同时，大家还是要学习有关服装类的话题词汇。

Types of Clothing 服装类型

Casual Wear 便装

- a pair of jeans 牛仔裤
- a pair of slacks 宽松裤
- a T-shirt T恤衫
- a sweater 运动衫，毛线衫
- a pair of shorts 短裤
- a cardigan 开襟羊毛衫

Formal Wear 正装

- a business suit 西装
- a vest 背心，马甲
- a tie 领带
- a bow tie 领结
- a wedding gown 结婚礼服
- a ballroom gown 宴会礼服
- a tuxedo 无尾礼服
- an overcoat 外套大衣
- a fur coat 裘皮大衣

Both Formal and Casual Wear 正式休闲皆可

- a pair of trousers (Br.) = a pair of pants (U.S.) 长裤
- a shirt 衬衫
- a skirt 裙子
- a dress 服装，连衣裙
- a blouse 女式衬衫
- a coat 外套

- a jacket 短上衣, 夹克衫

Sportswear 运动装

- a tracksuit 运动服
- clothes for football, basketball etc. 足球、篮球服装
- ski clothes (a ski vest, a pair of ski pants, a ski jacket) 滑雪服 (滑雪背心, 滑雪裤, 滑雪上衣)

- a swimming costume = a swimsuit 游泳衣

- golf clothes 高尔夫服装

- sports fishing clothes 钓鱼服装

Work clothes 工作服

- a pair of protective overalls 防护性工作服

- a doctor's gown 医生的长袍

- a lab coat 实验工作服

- an apron 围裙

Uniforms 制服

For the following groups: 为以下群体设计:

- school children 学生

- police 警察

- security guards 保安, 警卫

- the military = the armed forces (army, navy, air-force) 军队 (陆军, 海军, 空军)

- mailmen = postmen 邮递员

- some company and factory employees 一些公司和工厂的员工

- airline pilots and flight attendants 飞行员和乘务员

- railway and bus-line employees 铁路和公交战线的员工

- nurses 护士

- waiters and waitresses 服务员

- sports teams 运动队

- marching band members 军乐队成员

Footwear 鞋类

- shoes 鞋子
- dress shoes = formal shoes 盛装鞋
- sandals 凉鞋
- house slippers 家居拖鞋
- thongs (U.S. = “flip-flops”) 夹脚凉鞋
- gym boots (sneakers) 旅游鞋，运动鞋
- dancing shoes 跳舞鞋
- martial arts slippers 武术鞋
- sports shoes—football, golf, track and field 运动鞋——足球，高尔夫，田径
- work boots 工作鞋
- rain boots 雨靴
- fur-lined winter boots 毛皮衬里的冬季靴子
- high-heels 高跟鞋
- platform shoes 厚底鞋



Hats 帽子

- baseball caps 棒球帽
- cowboy hats 牛仔帽
- straw hats 草帽
- berets 贝雷帽
- fur hats 毛皮帽
- hard hats (safety hats) 安全帽
- motorcycle helmets 摩托车头盔



Other 其他

- baby clothes 婴儿服
- underwear 内衣
- pyjamas (U.S. = pajamas) 睡衣裤
- a dressing gown 晨衣，浴衣
- a raincoat 雨衣

日常生活类第五大主题是Time, 在这个主题中有以下这些真题:

Do you (usually) wear a watch (a wrist watch)? (Why?)
What do you use your watch for?
Do you often look at your watch?
Do you think time is very important? (Why?)
Do you think time management is important?
Have you ever been late for anything?
Were there any serious consequences when you were late?
Do you think it's important to be on time?
Do you think punctuality is important?
How do you feel when you are late?
How do you feel when (other) people are late?
Do you feel that time moves slowly, or fast?
When do you feel time moves fast?
When do you feel time moves slowly?
If you could go back in time, what would you do differently?

这个部分主要讨论手表、时间的重要性、守时和准时、时间流逝几个方面的问题。这几个方面的问题绝对不能空讲, 一定要结合例子说明, 比如说到哪些场合中时间的重要性。

上课上班, 参加考试, 赶飞机火车, 从守时与个性特点之间的关系等几个方面来回答以上问题能够很好解决雅思口语考试Part 1的时间类考题。



接下来关注日常生活类第六大主题是Friends, 在这个主题中有以下这些真题:

How often do you meet with (or go out with) your friends?
Do you feel that you spend enough time with your friends?
Do you feel that you have enough time to spend with your friends?
What do you do when you are with your friends?
Are most of your friends from school (or university) or from outside school (or university)?
Where do you usually meet (= spend time with) your friends?
Do you prefer to meet your friends at home or away from your home?
Do you like making friends with (a lot of) people?
Do you think friendship is important?
How do you keep in contact with your friends?

Friends话题同样是雅思口语考试的经典话题，在雅思口语考试中被无数次考到。来看一下考生是如何回答这类问题的。

1. Do you like making friends?

Sample Answer: Yes, I would say I like making friends a lot. By making friends with other people, I can learn something from them and know the world better through other minds.

2. How do you choose friends?

Sample Answer: Well, I like to have friends who like to do the same kinds of things I do. It doesn't mean we have to be exactly like each other, just that we enjoy something of the same. For example, I am really into sports. I will like friends who enjoy playing many of the games I do. Besides, I care much for their personality. I prefer friends who are easy-going, kind, and not too aggressive.

3. What are the preferable ways of making friends with people?

Sample Answer: First, I think you must be around to meet people. Sitting in front of the TV all day will not bring friends to you. Second, you need to interact with people in ways that are inviting and non-threatening. Talking and chatting will make you closer to each other. Third, you need to be active in turning an acquaintance into a friend. Actually, these statements seem obvious, but we really have to employ them.

4. What does friends mean to you?

Sample Answer: I would say that friends means a lot to me. Friends are people who accompany me when I am lonely, who listen to me when I need someone to talk to, who are always there for me when I need a helping hand. Without friends, life will lose a very important and beautiful part.

5. What should people do to keep the relationship with friends?

Sample Answer: I think to keep friendship fresh and lasting, people should share interests and activities, which means to spend time together, trust each other and be honest, share thoughts and feelings, and respect their opinions and beliefs. In addition, friends should accept each other for who they are and always give encouragement and support. I have some very good friends. We go out together on weekend having fun. I also have friends who are far away. In this case, we stay in touch by regular e-mails and telephone calls.

朋友类话题的题目相对而言比较简单，不需要考生有很多的背景知识，也不需要考生掌握很多相关的话题词汇。



日常生活类第七大主题是Sounds，在这个主题中有以下这些真题：

Do you prefer a quiet environment or an environment with some sounds?

What natural sounds do you like (the most)? (Why?)

What sounds do you dislike? (Why?)

What sounds remind you of your childhood?

Sounds这个主题是比较新的一个雅思口语考试的主题，比如natural sounds的话题，其中包括wind sound, bird song, breeze sound, wave sound等等，因此在回答这个话题的时候要注意列举各种sound的类型，并且扩充说明。

日常生活类第八大主题是Daily Routine，在这个主题中有以下这些真题：

What time do you usually get up?

What do you usually do after you get up (or in the morning)?

What's your favourite time of (or part of) the day?

What's your favourite day of the week?

Is your life now the same as it was before?

What changes would you like to make to your daily routine (or to your life) in the future?

关于Daily Routine（每日常规）类别的话题，在回答的时候要注意尽量把考生每天的事情详细说明，如果考生是学生，就把自己的常规要做的事情说清楚，如果工作了，就把工作相关的内容讲得越详细越好！

第4节 Part 1 休闲爱好类口语考题真题荟萃

休闲爱好类考题是雅思口语考试Part 1的重点话题，也是大多数题目所涉及的内容。在这个部分中的所有题目都是跟生活中的休闲内容相关的，这个部分包含九大主题，分别是Fruits and Vegetables, Films, Art, Leisure Time, Sport, Television, Cooking, Reading和Collecting。从这些主题涉及的范围来看，很多考生在考试中都会被问及这个主题中的相关内容，这个部分准备得充分与否也直接关系到考生成绩的高低。

首先，从Fruits and Vegetables这个话题入手来看以下休闲爱好类口语考试的真题：

Do you like to eat fruit(s) and vegetables?

What fruit(s) (and / or vegetables) do you specially like to eat?

What's your favourite fruit?

Did you like to eat vegetables when you were a child?

Generally speaking, do children like to eat fruits and vegetables?

What fruits and vegetables did you like to eat when you were a child?

Is it easy (or convenient) to buy fruits and vegetables where you live?

What are the benefits of eating fresh fruits (or fresh fruits and vegetables)?

How much fruits and vegetables do you think a person needs to eat (everyday) to stay healthy?

(In China,) Is there much difference between the fruits and vegetables that people eat today and what they used to eat in the past?

Would you ever grow your own vegetables?

What's the difference between growing your own vegetables and growing vegetables on a large farm?

What factors affect the growing of fruits and vegetables on a farm?

水果蔬菜类的考题在休闲爱好类的话题中算是一个冷门考点，对考生词汇量和句型等语言要求不是很高，但是考生在准备这些考题的时候要注意以下几个方面：



☆ 常见的水果和蔬菜的英文说法要掌握，这里不一一列举。

☆ 吃水果蔬菜的重要性的阐述过程中要注意营养物质的名称，如：vitamins和minerals等，以及它们对身体的好处，如对心脏、血液循环、皮肤等的好处。

What's the difference between growing your own vegetables and growing vegetables on a large farm?

What factors affect the growing of fruits and vegetables on a farm?

这两个是有关于种植蔬菜水果的问题，问题非常刁钻，回答的时候要注意结合实例。

比如第一个问题，自己种植蔬菜和大型农场种植蔬菜的区别，要涉及：size（规模）、variety（种类）、time（所花的时间）、money（投入的成本）等几个方面。

休闲爱好类第二主题是Films，涉及的真题包括：

Do you like to watch films?

What types of films do you like?

What types of films do you like and what types of films do you dislike?

What kinds of films did you like to watch when you were a child?

Do you prefer to watch films at home or in a cinema?

电影类话题是很多考生感兴趣的话题，大家来看一下在考试中的高分考生是怎样回答考题的。



1. Compare old films with modern films in China.

Sample Answer: The subjects of old films in China are quite limited whereas those of modern films are relatively broad. And with so many technological developments in the film industry, films now can include visual effects that were formerly unimaginable.

2. What is the difference between watching movies and reading books?

Sample Answer: The differences between watching movies and reading books are huge. Reading books requires the involvement of the readers' imagination. It leaves enough time for the readers to digest and reflect while watching movies is quite the opposite. Audiences often receive information quickly but passively.

3. Why do children like cartoons?

Sample Answer: There are many reasons for children to like cartoons. To begin with, children are often fascinated by images with bright colors. Also, kids are easily drawn into stories featuring imaginary characters. And children find the funny voices of the characters in cartoon films very amusing as well.

4. What kinds of film do you like best?

Sample Answer: Cult movies are the kind of movies that I've found most enjoyable. They aren't really blockbusters (大片) when they come out and not many people go to see them. But there's something unusual about the characters (角色) or the plot (情节) that makes me really love them. When I find a movie like this, which really shows things in a new light, I learn all the script (台词) by heart (熟记) and never tire of talking about it with my friends.

5. What's the difference between watching films on TV and going to the cinema?

Sample Answer: At the cinema, the sound effects (音效) will be better and more realistic. You will be totally drawn in by the film, but when you are watching a film on TV, you will be distracted by other things like phone calls and commercials (广告).

6. Do you think films have any educational benefits?

Sample Answer: Yes, I think films are a good way to teach people things. Take documentaries (纪录片) for example, they cover topics from history to social science. Besides, animated films (动画片) encourage creative thinking in the audience (观众), especially pre-school children.

7. What does one need in order to make a film?

Sample Answer: I find a good script (剧本) is important in a successful movie, and there are factors such as gifted director (导演), amazing cast (演出阵容), good setting (布景) and fluid shooting (摄影) which should also be taken into account.

以上的Sample Answer中的内容重点词汇已经给大家标出中文解释，从中可以知道和电影有关的词汇的掌握是回答好这类问题的关键！

这里再补充一些电影类型的词汇。

Types of Movies 电影类型

- action and adventure 动作冒险片
- animated cartoons 动画片
- comedy 喜剧
- drama 戏剧
- horror 恐怖片
- martial arts 武术片
- musicals 音乐片，歌舞片
- romance 爱情片
- romantic comedy 浪漫喜剧
- science fiction 科幻片
- silent movies 无声电影
- (suspense) thrillers (悬疑) 惊悚片
- teen movies 青少年电影
- war movies 战争电影
- westerns 西部片
- documentary films 纪录片

休闲爱好类第三主题是Art，涉及的真题包括：

Do you like drawing / painting? (Why / Why not?)

Have you ever taken a class in (drawing or) painting?

When you were a child, did you have art classes at school?

Have you kept any of your drawings or paintings (from when you were a child)?

Do you think children should learn drawing / painting (from a young age)?

Do you think art is necessary (or important) in society?

Why do you think people buy paintings?

Why do you think people like to have a painting (or other artwork) in their homes?

Do you ever buy paintings (or have you ever bought a painting)?

艺术类考题是雅思口语考试第一部分最难的话题之一，考生对于这些题目要做精心准备。接下来分析以上的考题来学习如何应对艺术类题目。

在这个部分art主要是指painting（美术），并不是大家所认为的arts（艺术），美术类的题目并不是每个考生都能流畅回答的。

说到是否喜欢画画（美术），理由可以从以下几方面来阐述：

- ☆ 培养创造力和想象力 (creativity and imagination)。
- ☆ 培养耐心 (patience)。
- ☆ 培养独立性 (independence)。

Do you think art is necessary (or important) in society?这个问题在回答的时候要注意从以下三个方面入手：

- ☆ Art反映了国家的文化和历史。
- ☆ Art能使人从繁忙的工作和学习中解脱出来。
- ☆ Art的普及也解决了艺术家的就业问题。

最后两个问题：

Why do you think people buy paintings?

Why do you think people like to have a painting (or other artwork) in their homes?

关于人们买绘画艺术品的原因，主要从以下两个方面阐述：

- ☆ 绘画艺术品的购买力反映了购买者的财富。
- ☆ 绘画艺术品也是一种装饰品，作为家居陈设的一部分。

除了art（美术）的相关分析之外，还要注意arts（艺术）方面的相关考题和参考答案。



题目：If you had more free time, what would you do?

参考回答：I've always had an artistic bent, so if I had more free time I would definitely devote myself to visual arts like painting, drawing and photography. I also enjoy some performing arts like acting, singing and dancing.

词汇：artistic bent; devote myself to; visual arts; performing arts

• artistic bent: 艺术天赋（同义词：artistic talent; artistic gift）

- devote oneself to sth.: 致力于…… (同义词: commit oneself to)
- visual arts: 视觉艺术
- performing arts: 表演艺术

题目: What kinds of photos do you like to take?

参考回答: I'm not a professional photographer or anything, so most of the pictures I take are portraits of my friends or landscape shots of places I have visited. I have a friend who takes still life pictures of all the food she eats, but I think she's a little crazy.

词汇: portraits; landscape; still life

- portrait: (人物) 肖像 (同义词: description, picture, sketch, visual rendering, portrayal)
- landscape: 风景画 (同义词: scenery)
- still life: 静物

题目: How do you arrange your photos at home?

参考回答: I used to frame my favorite pictures and hang them on the wall and then I kept the rest of my pictures in albums. But now I have a digital camera, so I post my pictures online. It makes it easier to organize and share them.

词汇: framed; albums; digital camera

- frame: 框住 (同义词: enclose, outline, surround)
- album: 相册
- digital camera: 数码相机

题目: Do Chinese people like visiting museums?

参考回答: Some kinds of museums like natural history museums or art museums are popular with teachers and students. Science and technology museums are developing more interactive exhibitions to attract visitors, especially families. But most Chinese museums still charge admissions so they are too expensive for a lot of people.

词汇: natural history museum; interactive exhibitions; charge admissions

- natural history museum: 自然历史博物馆
- interactive exhibition: (允许游客提问或解决问题的) 互动展览
- charge admissions: 收取入场费

接下来关注休闲爱好类的第四大主题Leisure Time，相关的真题有以下这些：

What do you do in your free time?

What are your hobbies?

Do you often do things with others in a group (or with your friends)?

Do you prefer to do things in a family group or a group of friends?

What leisure activities do you and your family like doing together?

What do you do with your friends in your leisure time?

Do you and your family often get together for a family gathering?

What do you do at these family gatherings?

What kinds of leisure time activities are popular with young people today?

Where do people (in your country) go nowadays to spend their leisure time?

What types of outdoor leisure time activities are there (in your country)?

Do older people like to do the same activities?

Do you think modern people like to get together with others?

这个主题的问题很多都是可以任意发挥的，都在问考生休闲时间做什么事情，是非常开放的问题。来看一些考生的相关问题的Sample Answer。

1. What do you do in your spare time? / How do you usually spend your leisure time?

Sample Answer: Sometimes my work keeps me so busy that I hardly have any spare time. But if I really have some, I would like to do some reading. My friends also ask me to do sports together with them, like playing basketball and swimming.

2. Do you think spare time is important to you?

Sample Answer: Yes, recreation is as necessary to us as study or work. We cannot work all day long without recreation. The mind and body require change to make them acute and vigorous. And recreation can relieve us of the fatigue from our study or work, and make us cheerful. For example, people who sit much at their offices should take a kind of recreation that will supply their muscles with exercise.

3. How do you enjoy your weekend?

Sample Answer: Weekend is considered to be a good time for shopping, but I prefer to stay at home. You know, in such a busy city as Shanghai, there are always crowds on weekend wherever you go. What I do is to make a cup of coffee and pick a magazine to read, or just lie in my favorite sofa listening to the music.

4. How do older people think of younger people's habits?

Sample Answer: I am not completely sure since it is hard to say what older people think of us. I guess, they think we are too spoiled by our parents because of the one-child policy. Besides, our lives are more comfortable and they didn't have so many entertainments as we did. They also complain that we don't work hard and don't show as much respect and courtesy for older people as they did when they were young.

大家再来看一个满分考生的回答和相关的词汇分析。

题目：What do you do in your free time?

参考回答：It depends on how much time I have. If I've got a big block of free time, I'll surf online or watch a movie. But if I've just got a little block, I'll work out. It helps me decompress after a stressful day.

词汇：a big block of free time; work out; decompress; stressful

- a big block of free time: 一长段空闲时间
- work out: 锻炼；健身（同义词：exercises）
- decompress: 减压（同义词：relieve / ease pressure）
- stressful: 压力大的（同义词：demanding, taxing）

题目：Do you think it is important to have leisure time?

参考回答：Definitely. All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy. I think free time gives us a chance to unwind and recharge our batteries. It enables us to be even more productive in the long term.

词汇：all work and no play makes Jack a dull boy; unwind; recharge our batteries; productive

- All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy: 只工作，不玩耍，聪明孩子也变傻
- unwind: 放松；松弛（同义词：relax, wind down, slow down, let everything go, calm down, chill out）
- recharge one's batteries: 恢复精力
- productive: 有成效的（同义词：prolific, fruitful; 反义词：destructive）

从上面两个例子中可以发现，如果词汇的掌控力比较强的话，那么答案会更加精彩，满分的可能性也就大幅增加了！

休闲爱好类的第五大主题是Sport，以下是真题实录：

What kind(s) of physical exercise do you do to keep fit?

Are you interested in sport?

What sports do you like?

What sports are most popular with young people today?

Do children in China play much sport (or do much exercise)?

Is children's sport (or exercise) very important in China?

What kinds of exercise do you think are most suitable for children?

Did you (or do you) take part in any (organized) sport in school?

Do you think children should be encouraged to do more exercise?

What sports facilities did you (or do you) have in your high school?

Do you think it's important to have P.E. classes (or sports classes) at school? (Why? / Why not?)

What are the benefits of exercise (or sport)?

Are there any sports facilities near where you live? (for the public to use)

In the future, what sports would you like to play (or take part in / or learn)?

这些题目都是有关于考生爱好的体育类型以及体育的重要性和好处的，相对于前面的美术艺术类话题而言，这些就比较简单，因为体育无处不在：NBA、英超、意甲等都时时刻刻影响人们的生活，这些题目回答起来也比较容易。首先来看一个满分考生的回答和他运用的相关词汇。

题目：Have you played any sports?

参考回答：I used to play basketball when I was a kid because Michael Jordan was my role model. But when I realized I wasn't tall enough to make the cut, I took up table tennis, which relies more on concentration and quick reflexes.

词汇：role model; make the cut; concentration; reflexes

- role model: 楷模；行为榜样（同义词：exemplar, paradigm, model, example）
- make the cut: 达到标准（同义词：achieve the standard）
- concentration: 注意力（同义词：attention）
- reflex: 反应能力（同义词：reaction, spontaneous effect, response）

这个考生的回答非常经典，既有过去和现在的对比，又有爱好这个体育项目的原因。而且连接词和从句的运用也非常到位，可谓短小精悍的回答，点到为止，而且得到极高的分数。

除了这个例子之外，再来看一些其他的例子。

1. What sports do you play? What is your favorite sport?

Sample Answer:

A: To be direct, I am not very keen on sports. I watch sports games a little bit on TV, but I myself seldom play any sports.

B: My favorite sport is golf. Golf is a game in which a ball is struck with a club from a prepared area called the “teeing ground”, across fairway and to a second prepared area, which has a hole in it and is called the “putting green”. The object of the game is to complete what is known as a hole by playing a ball from the teeing ground into the hole on the putting green in the fewest possible number of strokes. A “round of golf” consists of playing 18 such holes. Golf originated from western countries, but it is getting more and more popular in China.

2. What sport is most popular in China?

Sample Answer: I think it is badminton. Badminton is a sport with a long history and has been Chinese strength in international sports meetings. We feel very proud when our sports team win medals and cups in the games. Furthermore, badminton is a sport that doesn't demand a big court, so people can play it without serious planning. I play it a lot on weekend with my friends.

由于每个同学所爱好的体育运动不同, 所认为的流行的体育运动的观点也不同, 因此在备考这类考题的时候要注重形成个性化的答案, 不要去背诵一些内容, 这样才能获取高分!

休闲爱好类的第六大主题是Television, 这个主题中包含以下这些真题:

Do you often watch television (TV)?

(Similar to above) Do you like watching television?

How much time (per day / per week etc.) do you spend watching television?

What programs do you like to watch?

What type(s) of television program do you watch when you want to relax?

When you were a child, did you (used to) watch more television than you do now, or less?

How do you feel about advertisements on TV?

Do you think watching TV is an important part of people's lives?

Do you prefer reading a newspaper (or reading a magazine) or watching TV?

Do you ever watch programs from other countries?

What benefits can people get from watching foreign TV programs?

Do you think watching TV can help you?

Do you think watching TV can help students in their studies (in their education)?

Has watching TV (ever) helped you in your work?

Is there any difference between different people when they watch TV?

大家看完这些题目会发现电视类的话题也能问得这么深刻，其实电视类话题在雅思写作中也是有涉及的，关键是看考生实际的想法，对于这种非常生活化的题目，考生一定要根据真题整理出适合自己的一套答案出来。

大家先来看一下相关题目 Sample Answer。

1. What kinds of characters do you like?

Sample Answer: I like characters who are very original and well-written. They don't need to be physically attractive... personality and behavior are more important. You know, so many programs are very formulaic and only use stock characters. I think these kinds of shows are really a waste of time.

2. Do older and younger people have different tastes in TV programs?

Sample Answer: I think that's safe to say. Older people like more substantial programming, like news or documentaries and they don't like graphic or violent shows. Meanwhile, younger people like more reality shows and sitcoms.

3. What's the difference between Western and Chinese TV?

Sample Answer: That's hard to say, but I suppose that Chinese TV is more formulaic... the kinds of programs are really fixed. And all the most popular ones are rip-offs of western programs. But American shows are more various and depict a wider range of topics.

4. What kinds of television programs are most popular in China?

Sample Answer: In recent years, reality programs / shows have become extremely popular with young people, especially talent searches like Super Girls. There are a lot of rip-offs of these kinds of programs. And in general, miniseries have always been well-received in China. A popular one is called Band of Brothers.

在电视和电视节目类的话题答题的时候，考生一定要注重把电视节目的例子放到自己的答案中来，比如考生喜欢的美剧、财经类节目或者选秀类节目等，一定要注重以例子说明问题的原则！

考生还应该了解电视节目类的相关的词汇。

Types of TV Shows 电视节目类型

- cartoons 卡通
- children's shows 儿童节目
- documentary programs 纪录片节目
- drama (e.g. police dramas) 戏剧（如警匪片）
- game shows 娱乐节目
- made-for-TV movies (including mini-series) 电视电影（包括中篇剧集）

- musical video shows (e.g. MTV) 音乐视频节目 (如音乐电视)
- reality TV 真实电视, 真人秀
- situational comedies (sitcoms) 情景喜剧
- comedy shows 喜剧节目
- soap operas 肥皂剧
- sports programs (e.g. live broadcasts of sports events) 体育节目 (如运动项目实况转播)
- talk shows 谈话节目
- The News 新闻
- news programs (stress on first word) 新闻节目 (第一个单词重读)
- current affairs and news analysis (including interviews) 时事新闻分析 (包括采访)
- variety shows (e.g. The Chinese New Year family entertainment program) 综艺节目 (如新年家庭娱乐节目)
- pop music videos 流行音乐录像片
- advertisements (Make sure you can understand the British pronunciation of this word when you hear it) 广告

休闲爱好类的第七大主题是Cooking, 涉及的真题如下:

Do you know how to make (prepare) a meal?

How well do you cook?

Who usually does the cooking in your family (or in your home)?

Would you like to try any food that you have never eaten before?

Do you usually eat at home or do you usually eat away from home (= "eat out")?

What do you (like to) cook?

When did you learn how to cook?

When you were young, did you learn how to cook / make a meal (= how to prepare food)?

How did you learn to cook?

Who taught you how to cook?

Have you ever thought about learning how to cook?

Do you think everyone should learn how to cook?

Do you think it would be useful to teach cooking in school?

Do you think university students should know how to cook?

Can you see yourself cooking more in the (near) future? Why?

有关烹饪的话题主要有两大类，一个是关于考生会不会或者喜不喜欢cooking, 另外一个考生认为cooking技能是不是重要，要不要学。针对第一个问题，大家的切入点可以是：

☆ 业余时间的多少决定了自己是否cooking。

☆ 是否喜欢美食决定了是去餐厅吃还是自己做。

☆ 外面吃的卫生状况也决定了要自己cooking。

而针对第二个问题cooking技能是否重要，大家也可以有以下的切入点：

☆ cooking是一种生存技能，去国外留学需要有这种生存能力。

☆ 自己cooking也是一种省钱的方法，在欧洲和北美去餐厅吃价格会是自己做饭的几十倍。

☆ cooking也是一种维系家人良好关系的纽带。

因此，可以说cooking这个话题内容看似简单，其实包含了'很多很深层次的内容，考前要好好准备。

另外，再看一些其他的和这个主题相关的话题和参考答案。

1. Do you cook at home?

Sample Answer:

A: Yes, I cook as long as I have time to, in most cases, on weekend. However, I can only cook simple dishes.

B: No, I never cook. I think very few guys do that, especially when someone else in the family is really good at cooking. My mother is the cook of our family and she always prepares terrific meals for us.

2. Do you like fast food?

Sample Answer: Well, not particularly. I eat fast food quite often, including Chinese and western fast food. It is OK with me. If I have enough time to have a regular meal, I'd rather not eat fast food. Fast food is often fried, which I think is of no nutrition and is bad for your health. I only eat fast food when I am too busy to have a meal.

3. Why is fast food popular?

Sample Answer: The tempo of modern society is so fast that modern people must value time. Fast food is getting more and more popular in China because of the convenience, low price, and good service. You only need to wait a few minutes and the food will be ready. You can eat the food there or take it away as you wish. It saves people time and energy.

4. Do you eat out a lot?

Sample Answer:

A. I would say I do. That is because of my working hours. I am now living by myself in a

small house close to my company. I work from 9 am to 6 pm from Monday to Friday, and when I am back home after work, I feel too tired to cook dinner. More often than not, I eat at the small restaurant by the yard where I live.

B. No, I don't. Usually, my Mom has got dinner ready for me when I am home from school. But on holidays or if we celebrate festivals or successes, our whole family will go out to eat a rich dinner.

5. What do you think are healthy foods?

Sample Answer: In my opinion, a “healthy” food must be low in fat and saturated fat and contain limited amounts of cholesterol. In addition, if it's a single-item food, it should provide vitamins. Healthy foods to me are fruits and vegetables and certain cereal-grain products like oats and whole-wheat bread.

6. What is your eating habit?

Sample Answer: According to my eating habit, I usually eat three meals a day. If there is a lot of work that demands me to work late into the night, I eat midnight snacks. My main diet is rice, meat and vegetables. I like spicy food and often drink green tea after meals. I also eat a lot of fruits as they provide me vitamins needed daily. My midnight snacks are often frozen dumplings, which can be easily cooked in a microwave oven.

休闲爱好类的第八大主题是Reading，涉及的真题有如下一些：

Do you like reading?

What (sorts of books) do you like to read?

How much time each day do you spend reading?

Where do you usually do your reading?

Did you like reading when you were a child?

What did you (like to) read when you were a child?

For children, what are the benefits of reading?

What are the differences between what you read today, compared to when you were a child?

What books (or what things) have you read recently?

What's the most recent book you've read?

阅读主题是雅思口语考试的常见话题，其中大多数题目都是比较容易回答的，但是要注意过去时的运用。For children, what are the benefits of reading?和What are the differences between what you read today, compared to when you were a child?是这个部分相对而言最难的两道题目了。对于前一题的思路是：

阅读对于儿童的好处是：语言学习，文化学习，增长知识，智力开发等。

第二题是现在阅读的内容和过去的区别，内容涉及：长度不同，题材不同，文章的语言种类不同，时代背景不同等方面。

相对而言，Reading类别的题目还是比较容易回答的，大家来看一些Sample Answer。

题目：Do Chinese people like to read?

参考回答：It's hard to generalize. I think it depends on individual preference. If you go to bookstores or libraries on the weekends you can find hundreds of people skimming through magazines, self-improvement books or novels. But I would say only a few people actually buy the books and take them home.

词汇：individual preference, skim through, self-improvement books; generalize

- individual preference: 个人喜好
- skim through: 略读；浏览
- self-improvement book: 励志书籍
- generalize: 笼统地表达；概括地论述

题目：Do you think that people's taste in books changes as they get older?

参考回答：Perhaps they do. For example, children like reading fairy tales and comic strips, young people like romance novels, while older people often prefer nonfiction or biographies. It's just because different age groups have different attention spans.

词汇：comic strips, nonfiction; biographies, attention spans

- comic strip: 连环画（同义词：comic book）
- nonfiction: 非小说类文学作品；写实作品（反义词：fiction）
- biography: 传记（同义词：memoirs, life story, life history）
- attention span: 注意力集中的持续时间

题目：What do you think are the benefits of reading?

参考回答：Well, I think reading can expand our horizons, give us food for thought and unlock our creative potential. Besides, it teaches us how to see things from other people's perspectives.

词汇：expand out horizons; food for thought; creative potential; perspectives

- expand our horizon: 拓宽眼界
- food for thought: 值得认真思考的东西
- creative potential: 潜在创造力
- perspective: 角度；看法（同义词：viewpoint, standpoint, outlook, point of view, angle）

题目: How do you think reading habits will change in the future?

参考回答: Actually, I am not sure. Entertainment seems to be more and more towards digital media like DVDs and computer games. As computers and game players become more portable and readily available, I think fewer people will read books for fun. But I think reading, whether printed or online materials will always be an important way to share information.

词汇: digital media; portable; readily available

- digital media: 数码媒介
- portable: 便携的 (同义词: transportable, handy; 反义词: fixed)
- readily available: 随时可得到的 (同义词: easily got)

对于具体的阅读内容, 大家同样要学习一些相关的话题词汇。

Things to Read 读物

For News 新闻

- newspapers 报纸
- company and organization newsletters 公司和机构的新闻刊物、时事通讯

Magazines 杂志

- fashion magazines 时尚杂志
- movie magazines 电影杂志
- computer magazines 计算机杂志
- news magazines 新闻杂志
- sports magazines 体育杂志
- hobbyist magazines 业余爱好者杂志
- technical and professional journals 专业技术杂志
- art magazines 艺术杂志
- home decoration magazines 家居装潢杂志
- women's magazines 女性杂志

Literature 文学

- autobiographies 自传
- biographies 传记
- novels (historical novels, thrillers, mystery stories, romance novels, detective stories, science fiction) 小说 (历史小说, 惊悚小说, 怪诞小说, 爱情小说, 侦探小说, 科幻小说)
- poetry 诗歌

- plays 戏剧
- short stories 短篇小说
- essays 随笔
- literary criticism 文艺评论，文学批评

Education 教育

- textbooks 教科书
- reference books 参考书
- encyclopaedias 百科全书
- “how-to” books 指导书
- “self-help” books 自助手册

Entertainment 娱乐

- comic books 漫画书
- puzzle books 益智图书

Personal Correspondence 私人信函

- letters 书信
- e-mails 电子邮件
- postcards 明信片
- faxes 传真
- cell-phone text messages 手机短信
- online chatting 网聊

休闲爱好类的第九大主题是Collecting，以下是这个部分考到过的真题：

Do you collect anything (as a hobby)?

Have you ever collected anything?

Why do you like collecting things?

What are some examples of things that some people collect (as a hobby)?

Do boys and girls usually collect the same things?

Do you think you will collect anything in the future?

If you had a lot of money, what would you like to collect?

在回答收藏类话题的时候，考生要注意一定要结合自己的兴趣爱好来回答，比如说喜欢篮球，考生可以说一直收集篮球杂志，比如喜欢某个体育或者娱乐明星，就可以说一直收集他的海报。或者喜欢旅游的话，考生也可以说喜欢收集不同地方的明信片。答案是没有固定内容的，全看考生的兴趣爱好。

第5节 *Part 1* 旅游交通类口语考题真题荟萃

旅游交通类口语考题一直是雅思口语考试考查的焦点内容，也是雅思口语考试改革以后一直保留的考题，这两类题目其实也是跟考生的生活息息相关的，在这个部分中就包含两个部分：Transportation和Travelling。

大家首先关注的是Transportation类考题，在雅思口语考试中出现过以下的真题：

What forms of transportation do you have where you live (in your hometown)?

What means of transport do you usually use?

Do you often use public transportation?

Why do you think so many modern people drive a car?

Do you (ever / usually) drive a car?

When did you get your driver's license?

Do you think it's necessary to learn to drive?

Do high school students in China drive cars?

In the future, when you have a child, at what age will you allow him or her to get a driver's license?

Do you think it would be a good idea to have driving classes in high school?

这个话题的两大类问题包括考生喜欢的交通工具和学习驾驶。这两类问题回答起来难度不高，也不需要专业词汇的支持。

除了以上这些题目以外，这个话题还有一些值得关注的题目，各位考生请看以下的题目和参考回答：



1. How has transportation changed in the last 20 years?

Sample Answer: Nowadays, transportation has changed a lot. First the road system is better than before. The roads are wider and many flyovers have been built. Also, the subway system serves more places. Second, we have more choices in transportation than in the past such as taxis, planes, etc, even in a small city. Third, the public buses have been improved. In the streets, it is not difficult to find air-conditioned buses, which are cleaner and more modern. But in my opinion, the changes in public transportation haven't kept pace with the growth of cars and that's a serious challenge for our cities.

2. How can traffic problems best be solved?

Sample Answer: I think the best way to solve the traffic problem is to widen our roads and build more flyovers and underground lines. Shanghai has successfully done this and now experiences fewer traffic problems as a result. I think that we also have to encourage people to take public transportation more often or simply ride their bicycles more.

3. Could you tell me how to improve traffic in cities?

Sample Answer: In the view of the seriousness of traffic problems, effective measures must be taken before things get worse. On the one hand, the government should invest more money in the building of new roads and the repairing and maintenance of old ones. On the other hand, the number of private cars in urban areas should be limited while the number of public buses should be increased. And the government should call on the people to use public buses more.

4. What is the transport like in your city?

Sample Answer: It's just OK. There are buses, taxis, subways, bicycles, etc. I myself always go to work by subway, as it is fast and convenient. But the trouble is every time I go to the subway, there are so many people that it is hard to squeeze into the car. The road transport is worse, I am afraid. Two or three stops take more than 20 minutes in rush hours. And there has been more and more private cars on the road with the improving level of people's lives, which makes the road situation even harder.

5. Do you like traveling alone or with other people? Why?

Sample Answer: I like traveling with my friends. I like liveliness. If one travels alone, it is easy for him to feel lonely. Most of my friends have the same traveling interest with me and while traveling, we can chat and have fun together.

6. Can you imagine what transport will be like in the future?

Sample Answer: Well, in the future, I guess vehicles will be fuelled by different energy sources because we cannot continue with the limited petroleum forever. Therefore, I imagine that when new energy sources come out, people will see vehicles of different design. Also, I think that some kinds of transportation will begin to be used in the air more often just for short heights because the places on land are smaller and smaller and the road systems cannot always be maintained and repaired forever. We need to find other ways, so I imagine our cars will probably be able to fly and maybe there will be flying bicycles too.

通过对以上参考答案的学习，各位考生在雅思口语考试中应对交通类考题的时候就可以游刃有余了。

旅游交通类的另一个话题是Travelling，先来了解该话题考过哪些真题：

Do you often travel (go travelling)?

Why do you travel? (purposes)

Do you prefer travelling alone or with others such as family or friends?

What kind of places do you (like to) travel to?

Have you ever been on a long trip? (If yes, say where you went!)

Do you like travelling? (Include why, i.e., what you like about travelling)

What do you like about travelling?

What types of places do you like to travel to?

What are some places that you have travelled to?

What was the last place you travelled to?

What was the most interesting place you have travelled to?

What did you gain from that trip?

Which city (or place) that you have been to did you like the most? (Why?)

What (kind of) place would you like to travel to in the future?

What makes a place attractive for visitors (or tourists)?

What places in China are (or would be) attractive for foreigners to travel to?

Why do you think travelling is so popular nowadays?

旅游类话题跟体育类相同，回答的时候要有实例来证明自己的答案，这个时候就要举一些例子说明所去过的地方，看到过的风景，并且要说明为什么喜欢旅游，大家通过以下一些答题实例来学习：

1. Where have you travelled?

Sample Answer: Usually I am busy with my studies, so I haven't got much time to travel. I have only been to some cities in China, like Suzhou, Hangzhou and Beijing.

2. What place impressed you most?

Sample Answer: Among the places I have been to, I think Hangzhou is the one which gives me greatest impression. The weather is very mild and warm, nothing like that in my hometown. The pace of life there is also very comfortable. You always feel at ease doing things.

3. What is your favorite way of travelling?

Sample Answer: I usually travel by train. It is safe and convenient. On the train, you get plenty of space to move around. And you can enjoy the scenery out of the window.

这类话题在回答的时候不用太考虑用难词，而是要表达考生真实的想法。另外再来关注一些使用比较复杂词汇的考生的表现。

题目：When do you usually have your holidays?

参考回答：Everyone in China gets days off for public holidays and traditional festivals like May Day and Spring Festival. In addition, I get about a week of annual leave. I like to use it all at once in autumn because the weather is fine and I'm ready for a change of pace by then.

词汇：public holidays; annual leave; a change of pace

- public holiday: 公众假期
- annual leave: 年假
- a change of pace: 改变生活节奏

题目：Do you prefer to travel or stay home?

参考回答：I think they both have advantages. When I stay at home, I can get caught up on all the little things I sometimes neglect as part of my daily routine. But travelling gives me the opportunity to get away from it all and really relax.

词汇：get caught up on; neglect; routine; get away from it all

- get caught up on: 赶上；弥补（同义词：make up for）
- neglect: 忽视；忽略（同义词：abandon, desert, ignore, overlook, pass over; 反义词：care for）
- routine: 惯例；常规（同义词：habit, schedule, practice）
- get away from it all: 摆脱所有烦恼

题目：What kinds of places do you like to travel to?

参考回答：It depends on how I'm feeling. When I want an adventure, I like to go hiking in the mountains or sightseeing in a new city. When I need a rest, I like to sunbathe at the beach or relax at a resort.

词汇：go hiking; sunbathe; resort

- go hiking: 徒步旅行；远足
- sunbathe: 沐日光浴；晒太阳
- resort: 度假胜地

题目：If you could go anywhere in the world on your holidays, where would you go?

参考回答：There's so many places, it's almost impossible to choose... someplace with outstanding natural scenery but also a distinctive culture or cuisine. Also, someplace where the locals are welcoming and easy to talk to.

词汇: natural scenery; distinctive; cuisine; the locals

- natural scenery: 自然风光
- distinctive: 与众不同的 (同义词: characteristic, distinguishing, distinct; 反义词: common)
- cuisine: 烹饪 (同义词: cooking, cookery, gastronomy)
- the locals: 当地人 (同义词: the natives, residents, inhabitants, citizens; 反义词: strangers, foreigners)

不管词汇简单还是复杂，

能够准确表达自己的*idea*才是最重要的！

第6节 雅思口语考试Part 1·大黄金原则

黄金原则1:

直接回答考官的问题，再说原因或者例子。如果没有直接回答问题而直接说例子会被认为逻辑混乱而失分。

黄金原则2:

举例法是雅思口语考试第一部分的重要应用技能。当考生无话可说的时候记住要举例子，例子尽可能详细，但是记住例子要围绕话题，不能跑题，否则考官会认为考生逻辑混乱或者认为考生背过答案，在胡编乱造。

黄金原则3:

保持适当的紧张度，但是不能过于紧张而口齿不清造成失分。

黄金原则4:

一开始语速尽量保持正常，不能过快也不能过慢，口齿一定要清晰！

黄金原则5:

进考场之前把本书中的真题和相关的例子看熟，在候考室内在脑子里再过一遍，对于考试的信心提升有极大帮助。

黄金原则6:

要注意和考官亲切自然地交流，语言一定要有节奏和语调！

黄金原则7:

回答考官的每个问题时尽量多说，因为考生多说了考官问题就少了。

黄金原则8:

当考生什么都讲不出的时候运用5Ws原则，寻找what, when, where, who, why这些元素来回答问题。

第 4 章

雅思口语考试

Part 2 全解析



An Analysis of IELTS Speaking Part 2

对于雅思口语考试Part 2，很少有人能在没有准备的情况下出口成章。即使有人可以，也难回答得完美。因此准备素材变得尤为重要。它能使难以开口的考生顺利过关，使实力较好的考生获得满分。当然，雅思口语考试Part 2是个三分靠理论、七分靠实践的东西。没有自己的积累与实践，看再多的材料也是徒劳。而大家最后能达到怎样的高度，答案是自己给出的。祝愿本章节能对大家的口语有所帮助。

雅思口语考试Part 2复习建议：

- 以下章节提供的所有回答从中等偏上到高分水平的参考例文都有，请根据考生自身情况重新构思。
- 写通用段子（比如体育明星或者老师，在表述人物的段子中都可以用到；比如香港，在描述地点类的段子中也可以通用）。如果不能够把每个问题全写出来，则每个题至少要想好3个回答的论据，论据应可以在多个题中通用。
- 把自己回答内容相似的问题归类，以便考试时容易迅速回忆。
- 论据的积累可以与雅思写作Task 2结合在一起复习，实践发现有些题目在口语、写作中都出现过。
- 把握几个要点：逻辑严密，语言连贯，语调恰当，语速适中，时间利用充分。
- 写什么难度的段子？它应该包含有较高级的词汇，多样的语法句式以及独特的创意。

第1节 Describing People 人物描述类

► 描述家庭成员

Sample A

Describe a family member that you are very close to.

Your should say:

Who this person is.

What this person is like.

How you are like and unlike this person.

And explain why you are close to this person.

The person I am very close to in my family is my mother. My mother is medium height who always wears a friendly smile on her face. Blue is her favorite color as she thinks it symbols peace and emotion. I think it has a lot to do with her personality. As a music teacher, she is always very patient and kind to her students. There are quite a few similarities between us. People always say that I look like my mother more than my father. We both like listening to the music and watching movies. On weekends, we often go shopping in the supermarkets or the department stores. But we are also different in many ways. My mother is a good gardener. Our veranda is lined with all her gardening masterpieces, such as chrysanthemum and Chinese roses. I am not so patient in taking care of the plants. Besides, my mother can cook many delicious dishes, while I can't cook at all. I have learned how to treat people and how to deal with problems on my own from her. She is the one I am close to as she really influences me a lot.



Sample B

Describe a member of your family who you are very close to.

You should say:

Who the family member is.

How you are like that family member.

How you differ from that family member.

And explain why you are close to him / her.

It is actually quite hard for me to choose one member of my family as I feel close to all of them, but I get on very well with my younger cousin, Sara. Everyone says we are like two peas in a pod. The family resemblance is very strong and we have similar interests and personalities. For example, we are both very artistic and outgoing in terms of personality. On the other hand, there's a big age gap between us. I'm six years older and a lot more mature. We've also been living in different cities for a few years. But even though we only see each other a few weeks a year, we try to keep in touch by e-mails, letters, etc. I suppose the reason we are close is because we share so many characteristics and interests. In my opinion, it's very important in a relationship to have things like that in common. And I think we are close because our whole family makes an effort to renew our ties.



► 描述朋友

Describe your best friend.

You should say:

Who this friend is.

What this friend is like.

What you do together.

And explain why you like this friend best.

Speaking of friends, the first one I'd like to talk about is Alex. We got to know each other in high school. He was a very shy person and I remember he seldom talked to people. We lived quite close and usually we went school together, so naturally we became good friends. Alex entered university to study architecture design afterwards and now, he works as an architecture designer in a joint venture. Although both of us are pretty busy with our job, we tend to spend weekends once in a while. Tennis court is the first place that we choose to go to. Sometimes we also have a drink together in the bar. You know, it is quite important and exciting to catch up with each other's life. What influence me most in Alex is his hard work and his will to help people. His hard work made him the top student in the past and has won him many successes in his career. Whenever I am in trouble or difficulties, he is always there with a helping hand and an encouraging smile. I do appreciate having this friend.



► 描述儿童

Describe a child you like.

You should say:

Who this child is.

When and how you got to know this child.

What the child likes or dislikes.

And explain why you like this child.

A: I would like to talk about a very special child called Brittany. I got to know her a few years ago at a housewarming party of a friend. That year, she was 6. She was there because her grandmother is also my friend's friend. When I first saw her, I could see she was very weak, but she smiled to everyone at the party and greeted people very politely. As her parents are divorced, Brittany and her younger brother are being raised by their single grandmother, who works hard to provide for the children. She is a sensible child and studies hard at school. She likes all kinds of subjects and she listens to the radio after school.

B: Brittany possesses an amazing gift of musical vision. Combining perfect pitch with total recall and uncanny inventiveness, she draws from a seemingly bottomless vessel of creativity to compose music with a depth and maturity well beyond her years. She likes learning new things and skills. Once she came to my house and saw me typing things, she asked to learn. Now her keyboard skills are developing very quickly. Brittany is special because she is very imaginative, inventive for her young mind. I like the child and if you get to know her, you will also like her.



雅思口语考试有很多考题可以通用以上三题的答案内容,考生可以根据实际情况略作修改。

A Person Who Has Visited Your Home

A Person Who Is Good at His / Her Job

A Person You Visited

Someone Who Does Something Well

A Person Who Took Care of You in Your Childhood

A Person Who Likes to Help Others

Someone You Like to Spend Time With

A Teenager You Know

A Person Who Is Good at His / Her Job

Someone Who Is Good at Cooking

A Person You Enjoy Talking With

A Person You Live With

An Interesting Old Person

所有这些题目只要准备1~2个人的描述内容就可以了。

另外比较特殊的一个话题就是Famous Person的描述。

► 描述名人

Sample A

Describe your favorite sports star.

You should say:

Who he / she is.

When & where you first saw him / her.

What sports he / she plays and how he / she plays it.

And explain why he / she is your favorite.

My favorite sports star is Michael Jordan. I can't remember for sure when I first saw him on TV, but it must be sometime in my junior high school. Perhaps he is the greatest player to ever play the game. He has ever got six championship rings.

Michael Jordan is the Chicago Bulls superstar who beat Charles Barkley and Akeem Olajuwon for Rookie of the Year Honors in 1985. He has been admired by all those who love playing and watching basketball. Almost everyone knows number 23 for the Chicago Bulls, flying through the air with the greatest ease, ball in hand, tongue wagging. Michael Jordan, the best known athlete in the world, is a leading scorer in the National Basketball Association (NBA), who led the Chicago Bulls to many recent NBA championships. He is, by far, and will be for a time to come, the best basketball player in the history of the game. I think Jordan not only defines the basketball game, he defines an era. And he will be respected for his super performance in the sport always.



Sample B

Describe a famous sports player in your country.

You should say:

Who the person is.

What sport he / she plays.

How long the person has been famous.

And explain why this person is famous.

I want to talk about Yao Ming because he is a famous sports player in China. A few years ago he used to play basketball in Shanghai but he was asked to join to the Houston Rockets in the NBA and so he plays there now. Since he moved to the US he has become very well-known both in the US and here in China. One of the things I like about him is that he seems to be a really nice guy because he seems to do lots of work with young sports players for free.



尽管这个答案比较短，但是给各位考生一个提示，也就是答案要尽可能切题，而且内容要详细，下面来看一段考官对于如何回答Part 2的建议。

Hints

1. It is sometimes a good idea to start with a phrase such as:

The (topic) I want to describe is ...

This will help you focus on the topic and NOT talk about something else!

2. Remember: answer the wh-related questions to help you expand the topic and continue the description, i.e. who, what, where, when, why (always a good topic to expand), how, how often, how many. Also feel free to expand the topic by using comparisons, short stories, and by saying what it's not! It's not necessary to talk in detail, but rather to talk about things related or connected to the topic.

3. The last part of the Task Card is usually a "why" question, so that means you have to give reasons for why the focus of your talk is special. Giving reasons means you should also give an example to support your ideas. The example could be a short story about an event or situation.

4. Try to use lots of vocabulary from the topic in the question; if the question is about your favourite book, then there should be lots of words about books, stories and feelings.

大家再看下面一道名人类的具体问题:

Describe a famous person you would like to meet.

You should say:

Who the person is.

What he / she is famous for.

Why you choose this person.

And what you would ask this person.

The famous person I would like to meet is Li Ka-shing, the richest person in Asia. He's also a self-made man who went from selling plastic flowers to owning a huge real estate development and telecommunications empire.

He's most famous for his rags-to-riches story. He had to drop out of school at 15 and worked in a factory to support his family. Now, thanks to his hard work, he's a billionaire and owns several companies.

But the main reason I choose him is that he is such an inspiring philanthropist. He has given billions of dollars to charity and even founded his own university. I really admire the fact that even though he is very rich and powerful, he still remembers his roots.

If I could meet Li Ka-shing, the first thing I would ask him would be the secret of his success. I would also want to know if he has any jobs available.



人物描述类的题目中还有一道特殊的题目，请看下面这道考题:

Describe the movie character that you admire most.

You should say:

Who it is.

What kind of person he / she is.

What he / she did.

And explain why this character impressed you so much.

He may not be a typical hero but I have to say that the character I admire most is Forrest Gump played by Tom Hanks.

Even though he has a low IQ, Forest is a simple, gentle and direct man. Over the course

of his life, he was a sports star, a brave soldier, a successful businessman and a catalyst for many important world events.

Through luck or fate, he witnessed many important historical events and met many key players on the world stage. He exposed the Watergate scandal and even influenced Elvis Presley's distinctive style of dancing.

In everything he did, Forest showed his simple attitude and gratitude for life. He made the best of what he had and triumphed over adversity. I like the film's message that you don't have to be remarkably intelligent, physically strong or good-looking to be a hero. It's quiet wisdom, humility and strength of character that make Forest such a good leader.



这道题目比较特殊，考生要引起特别重视，要准备一个电影人物以应付相关考题。

在人物描述类的口语话题类别中，大家也要了解和记忆相关的话题词汇。

Describing People 描述人

The adjectives below could be used in the following sentence: "She's very _____." Or, "She's a very _____ person." Or, "She's a very _____ type of person."

Of course, instead of "very" you can also use other words such as "quite" (十分, 完全), "rather" (相当), "somewhat" (稍微, 有点) and "extremely" (极端地, 非常地).

- friendly 友好的
- easy-going 随和的
- relaxed 不拘束的
- mellow 老练的
- open 坦率的, 开放的
- natural 自然的
- warm-hearted 热心的
- generous 慷慨的, 大方的
- helpful 有益的, 有帮助的
- co-operative 合作的, 协作的
- humourous 富有幽默感的
- funny 有趣的, 好笑的

- interesting 有趣味的
- unique 唯一的，独特的
- special 特殊的
- impressive 让人印象深刻的，感人的
- kind 和蔼的，仁慈的
- empathetic 感情移入的
- nice 漂亮的
- good 好的
- honest 诚实的，正直的
- considerate 考虑周到的
- selfless 无私的 (the opposite is “selfish” 自私的)
- down-to-earth 实际的
- extroverted 外向的
- outgoing 对人友好的
- gregarious 社交的
- sociable 好交际的，友善的
- spontaneous 自发的，自然产生的
- introverted 内向的，含蓄的 (This means “usually focused on one’s own thoughts”, such as a research scientist or an author.)
- shy 害羞的 (This means “a little fearful” of other people)
- private 私人的
- quiet 从容的，宁静的
- studious 勤学的，慎重的
- traditional 传统的
- conservative 保守的，守旧的
- old-fashioned 过时的
- fashionable 时髦的，流行的
- “cool” 酷的，冷静的，淡漠的
- “hip” 熟悉内情的
- modern 现代的，时髦的

- fashion-conscious 赶时髦的
- stylish 时髦的，漂亮的
- well-groomed 被小心照料的
- well-dressed 穿着考究的
- attractive 吸引人的，有魅力的
- good-looking 漂亮的
- handsome 英俊的
- beautiful 美丽的
- pretty 可爱的，漂亮的
- elegant 端庄的，文雅的
- graceful 优美的
- gentle 温和的，文雅的
- statuesque 雕像般的，轮廓清晰的 (usually for tall women)
- well-mannered 有礼貌的
- cultured 有教养的，有修养的
- sophisticated 世故的
- open-minded 思想开明的
- confident 自信的
- competitive 爱竞争的，竞争的
- fearless 大胆的，无畏的，勇敢的
- independent 独立的
- individualistic 个人主义的
- adventurous 喜欢冒险的，敢做敢为的
- persistent 坚持不懈的
- industrious (= hard-working) 勤勉的，刻苦的
- motivated 有积极性的
- single-minded 诚实的
- goal-oriented 目标明确的
- determined 坚决的
- ambitious 野心勃勃的

- strong-willed 意志坚强的，固执己见的
- passionate 充满热情的
- enthusiastic 热心的
- well-balanced 思想稳健的
- positive 积极的
- healthy 健康的
- fit (= healthy) 健康的
- health-conscious 重视健康的，注意健康的
- athletic 运动的
- physical 身体的，物理的
- artistic 艺术的，风雅的，有美感的
- talented 有才能的
- musical 音乐的
- theatrical 戏剧性的
- dramatic 戏剧性的
- expressive 有表现力的，富于表情的
- intelligent 聪明的，伶俐的
- bright 聪明的，伶俐的
- analytical 善于分析的
- erudite (= well-read) 博学的 (usually for older people)
- well-educated 受过良好教育的
- skilled 熟练的，有技能的
- professional 专业的
- thorough 十分的，彻底的
- careful 小心的，仔细的
- neat 整洁的，灵巧的
- precise 精确的，准确的
- meticulous 小心翼翼的
- reliable 可靠的，可信赖的
- punctual 准时的

- knowledgeable 知识渊博的，有见识的
- curious 好奇的
- far-sighted 有远见的
- insightful 富有洞察力的
- wise 明智的，睿智的
- mature 成熟的
- responsible 可靠的，有责任的
- intuitive 有直觉力的
- imaginative 有想象力的
- creative 创造性的
- playful 顽皮的（usually children）
- rambunctious 粗暴的（e.g. a two-year-old child）
- energetic 精力充沛的
- adorable 可崇拜的
- cute 可爱的
- loveable 可爱的，惹人爱的
- lovely 可爱的
- loving 钟情的，亲爱的

Some nouns 一些名词

- a joy 快乐
- an inspiration 灵感
- an example 例子
- a model student 模范学生
- a model son 模范儿子
- a devoted mother 深爱的妈妈，a devoted teacher 挚爱的老师，a devoted doctor 有献身精神的医生
- a genius 天才
- a leader 领导者

第2节 Describing Places 地点描述类

跟人物描述类相比，地点描述类的题目相对而言会比较容易准备，而且基本上要准备一到两个答案就可以为所有的题目通用了，大家先来看一些Samples。

► 描述城市

Describe your favorite city.

You should say:

What city and where it is.

When you went there.

What is special about the city.

And explain why it is your favorite.

Many people have their favorite city. My favorite city is called A. It's on the west coast of Wales, small but very nice. I went there two years ago. The city is very old and has got many historical buildings, for example, the ruins of the castle or Local Folk Museum. The most interesting and attractive place in the whole town is definitely "The Pier". It is a massive wooden construction going out towards the sea. That construction is a basement to a large building. Everyone can find something interesting there. There is an Indian Restaurant, a video-lending shop, a night-club, and the most important, "The Amusement". "The Amusement" attracts both children and adults. You can do really everything there, for example, take part in a car race, play on different gambling machines and computer games etc. There are many shops. Customers can almost buy anything they need and it is always of good quality. For example, I bought a dress in one shop, which I have been wearing very often. It isn't an industrial city, so the air is very clean and if you want to keep fit you can go jogging on the promenade every day. But the best time for that is the evening because then you can also admire the sunset and meet a lot of interesting people. I have been to many towns and cities, but A really caught me deeply with its grace and beauty.



► 描述餐厅

Describe the restaurant that you like best.

You should say:

What the name of the restaurant is.

Where it is.

Why you like it.

And explain why it is special.

Let me introduce a restaurant which is really special to me. Specifically, it's called New Star in English, it's within walking distance of my home, so I go there regularly, either with my friends or with my family members. I like it because the atmosphere appeals to me greatly. Most people who go there are locals. They live alone and don't want to bother to cook for themselves, so they go to this restaurant. They used to be shy and keep quiet while they were eating. The restaurant owner decided to give them a daily topic to exchange opinions about it. As a result people don't feel lonely any more. What makes the restaurant special is that people can make a lot of friends among their neighbors. Unlike most Chinese restaurants, on Fridays, smokers are separated from non-smokers. You will not be annoyed by the smoke hovering around you while you are enjoying your meal. More often than not, I go there as a reward for myself after a week's hard work.



► 描述公园

Sample A

Describe a park or a garden you visited.

You should say:

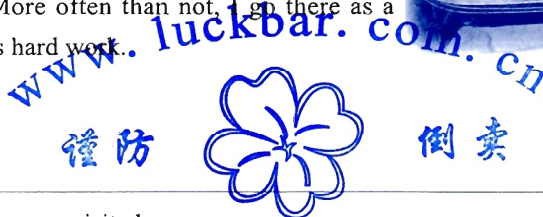
What this park or garden is and where it is.

When you went there.

What can be seen or done there.

And explain why you like the park or garden.

The garden I'd like to talk about is the Humble Administrator's Garden which covers 4 hectares in northeast Suzhou. It's the largest garden in the city and a virtual museum of horticulture from the Yangtze River and Southern China. I went there at the end of my first year at university. It was early summer and the garden was in full bloom.



唯一QQ: 2029808

The landscaping is focused around a central pond with various pavilions, terraces, rock sculptures and pagodas located by the water or on the surrounding hills. The entire grounds can be divided into three parts: an eastern, a central and a western part. The central one is especially worthy of a visit. It's reminiscent of classic Chinese landscape paintings in which different natural elements are in complete balance and harmony.

I enjoyed the Humble Administrator's Garden mainly because of its seemingly effortless design. It is like all of nature in a nutshell and lets you feel the charm of mountains, forests and springs transporting you completely away from the noisy surroundings of the town.



Sample B

Describe your favorite park / garden.

You should say:

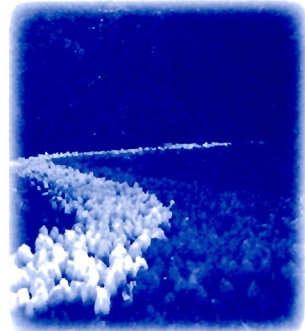
What park / garden & where it is.

Who built this park / garden.

What the park / garden is like.

And explain what you like most about it.

I like my own garden best. The front yard is shady with ferns and hostas in pea gravel. One side has nothing but stepping stones for it is so narrow. A high stockade fence provides privacy. A very small pond is in one corner. In the other, a table with chairs. A fountain in the center with vegetables around the floor flagstone. The back was shaded in the evening to eliminate the bright sun. My garden has a lot of flowering bulbs in it. Even in early spring, there are signs of flowers like daffodils just sprouting and beautiful primroses. I also have daisies, bee balm, hostas, blackeyed Susans, dame's rocket, columbine and wild roses. Last year I grew potatoes in my garden, too! Every year, I add new things to my garden. I usually get the new plants from my dad. They are the left-overs from his garden, so I never know what I'm going to get! My garden is part sun and part shade, so I have to make sure I plant things where they will grow best. My favorite thing about my garden is how pretty it is. The garden also gives me something to do when I don't have anything else to do. It's easy, lots of fun, and the rewards of beautiful flowers and a quiet place to sit and relax are worthy of the hard work!



► 描述博物馆

Describe a trip you took to a museum.

You should say:

when you went.

what kind of museum it was.

what you saw there.

And explain what you remember most about it.

When I was in middle school, our class took a field trip to the Shanghai Museum. As a museum of ancient Chinese art, the Shanghai Museum possesses a rich collection of precious works of art, accounting for almost half of the total such collections in the country.

It has a number of world-class exhibits including calligraphy, bronze-works, and porcelain. I was especially impressed with their collections of antique furniture and costumes from ethnic groups.

But the thing I remember most is how well-designed the exhibits were. Many older museums are overwhelming and the captions are too technical, but the Shanghai Museum only displays the best examples and the captions are written for laypeople.



相关的雅思口语考试Part 2描述地点类的真题还包括以下这些:

A (Place in a) City You Visited

A Building in Your School or University

A Place Where You Often Go Shopping

A Library

A Hotel

A Place for Swimming

Ideal Home

An Ideal Park

A Place with Lots of Water

A Garden

An Historic Site

以上这些是雅思口语考试地点类的所有考题,建议大家准备的时候要个性化,在学习前面的参考答案的时候不要完全背下来,而是要学习参考答案的思路。

接下来补充一些跟公园相关的词汇。

Parks 公园

- the entrance 入口
- an entrance fee 入场费
- a statue 雕像
- sculptures 雕塑品
- a fountain 喷泉
- a pool 水池
- a lake 湖
- a pond 池塘
- a river 河
- a bridge 桥
- a rockery 假山
- a bamboo grove 竹林
- a fish pond 鱼塘
- lawns 草坪
- gardens 花园
- flowers 花
- plants 植物
- trees 树
- vines 葡萄树
- bamboo 竹子
- a park bench = a park seat 公园的长椅
- in the shade 阴凉处
- in the sun 阳光下
- a pathway = a path 小路
- to stroll 漫步

- to walk 散步
- to jog 慢跑
- to do exercises 做运动
- to do stretching exercises 做伸展运动
- to do aerobics 做有氧运动
- to do tai chi = to practice tai chi 练太极
- to chat 聊天
- to dance 跳舞
- to play a musical instrument 玩乐器
- to perform 表演
- to sing 唱歌
- to entertain 娱乐
- to relax 放松
- to play chess 下象棋

第3节 Describing Objects 物体描述类

物体描述类是雅思口语考试的另一大描述种类,这种类型的题目涉及的内容包括具体的物品,比如电器设备或者是礼物,还有一些是抽象物体,比如描述一封信或者一个网站这样的题目,总体来说,物品描述类考题在雅思口语考试中出现的概率不是很高,考生只要准备比较有特点的几道题目就可以应付基本上所有的物体描述类考题了。

► 描述机器设备

Describe a machine that is important in your life.

You should say:

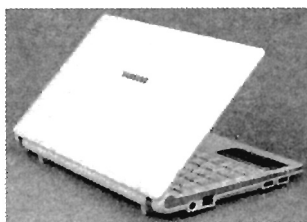
What machine it is.

When & where you bought it.

How useful it is.

And explain why this machine has changed people's life.

Talking about the machines that are important in my life, the first I would say is my computer. It is a SAMSUNG. I got it 2 years ago at the nearest computer mall. At that time, I was looking for a job. You know when people hunt for a job, they cannot miss the information online. So having a computer definitely was quite urgent for me. I asked one of my friends who is an expert on computers to go with me together and after looking from shop to shop, we decided to buy this one. I got it for about RMB 5,000 and I think it looks quite nice. More important, it really functions well. I have been using it for such a long time and it never breaks down! I use my computer mainly for communication and education. I e-mail my families and friends who live in a different city. I also have a teach-yourself English program, so that is education. And sometimes I shop online, which is very convenient and fast. People can do a lot of things on computer at home. I think computers have really changed people's life with the convenience they offer.



雅思口语考试Part 2真题中可以通用这道题目答案的包括:

A Piece of Equipment 一台设备

A Childhood Present 儿童礼物

Something You Lost 失物

Something You Want to Buy 你想买的物品

A Gift 礼物

A Childhood Toy 儿童玩具

► 描述服装

Describe an item of clothing that you recently bought.

You should say:

What it is and where you bought it.

What it looks like.

How much you spent on it.

And explain why you bought it.

The last article of clothing that I bought was a custom tailored suit. I wanted the best quality, so I bought it from a famous tailor's shop.

It has a two-button, single breasted jacket made of high-quality worsted wool. I chose the fabric color and pattern.

It cost me an arm and a leg, but I think it is worthy. I made a down-payment at the first fitting and paid the rest when I went to pick up the finished suit.

I chose to buy a business suit because I have several job interviews in the near future. Even though it was expensive to buy a tailored suit, I think it was a good investment because I could wear it on many different occasions and it should last a lifetime.



各位考生只要准备一个服装类话题相关的答案即可，考试中无论题目怎么变化，只要说准备过的服装类型即可。

► 描述书本或者报纸杂志

Sample A

Describe your favorite book.

You should say:

What the book is.

What it is about.

What you learned from it.

And explain why this book is your favorite.

I'd like to talk about a book entitled *Who Moved My Cheese?* The protagonists are two mice "Sniff" and "Scurry", and two little people "Hem" and "Haw". The two mice and two little people are trapped in a maze.

Sniff uses foresight and acts cautiously but Scurry acts rashly and rushes into danger. They finally find a new plate full of cheese after they lose the first pile. Haw, who learns to adapt to new challenges, finds cheese as well. But Hem, who is in denial and resists change, gets nothing.

The moral of the story is that we should face changes in life positively and bravely. I like this book because it is inspirational and thought-provoking. This book is considered one of the most influential and successful books on business ever published.



Sample B

Describe your favorite newspaper / magazine.

You should say:

What newspaper / magazine it is.

When and where you first read it.

What it is about.

And explain why you like this newspaper / magazine.

The magazine that I like most is called *Entertainment & Sports*. It's a monthly magazine. It was 2 years ago that I encountered it at a friend's home. Then I became so into it that I subscribed to it the following year. Here I always get a front row seat for the latest movies, TV, music, and more, with award-winning news, reviews, and feature stories. Each issue goes behind the scenes to deliver you the buzz, and the best in its Entertainment News every month! The Sports part has all of the inside news you crave about the persons who fascinate you. Each monthly issue is packed with amazing stories about sports people and their extraordinary lives. It gets you closer to the heart of sports with spectacular action photos and in-depth coverage. It also takes you into the minds and hearts of the players and coaches. With the illustrations, you get into it! When you simply have to know the latest about current hottest celebrities, you simply have to have it. In addition, the paper quality is quite good. I think this is one of the best magazines.



雅思口语考试题库中Book类的考题还有以下几个:

A Book You Enjoyed as a Child 一本你儿时喜爱读的书

A Book You Enjoyed Reading 一本你爱读的书

A Book You Recently Read 一本你最近读的书

► 描述网站

Describe an interesting website you have visited.

You should discuss:

What website you're talking about and what kind of website it is.

How you found it.

What you can get from it.

And explain why it is so interesting to you.

Today I'd like to introduce sina.com. As is known to all, it's a web portal in China. You can use it to set up an e-mail account or blog, check the news and weather or take some online quizzes on fun topics like "How long before you're the boss?" It isn't very difficult to find because almost everyone is bombarded by its advertisements. Take me for example, when I got my first PC, my friend recommended it to me. It provides us with a wide range of information and knowledge. For instance, there's a search engine that helps you find whatever you're looking for and links sorted by topic so you can find a lot of other relevant webpages. You might think it's crazy but in my opinion, what makes this website interesting is the flash games and quizzes. Whenever I have a little time to kill, I log on to try them. It's updated every day, so there's always something new for everyone to enjoy.

► 描述信件或者电子邮件

Describe an important letter or e-mail that was sent to you.

You should say:

who it was from.

when you received it.

what it was about.

and explain how you felt when you received it.

Probably the most important letter I ever received was my test results for the college entrance examination. It was sent out by the Chinese Department of Education after my exam was marked.

I received the letter during my summer holidays after I graduated, about two weeks after I took the exam. They were the longest two weeks of my life.

The letter contained my overall score on the exam but didn't tell me how well I did on each section. And it didn't tell me the score I needed to get into my first-choice university.

I didn't feel very confident about my exam so I was dreading getting the results. I was so nervous when I got the letter that I could barely read it. I did OK, but not well enough to guarantee me a place at the university I wanted to attend. I had to spend two more weeks sweating it out before I got my acceptance letter from the university. That was the second most important letter in my life!

其他的抽象类描述内容还包括:

An Interesting Talk 一次有趣的谈话

A Course You Would Like to Study 一门你可能喜欢学习的课程

A Work of Art 一件艺术品

其中A Work of Art要精心准备,以防万一。建议大家从与生活相关的艺术品着手讨论,比如说一部手机也可以是一件艺术品,一台笔记本电脑或者iPod也可以是一件艺术品;同样地,考生也可以讨论比较传统的艺术品,比如钢琴、油画或音乐作品。

第4节 *Describing Events* 事件描述类

事件描述类的考题相对而言难度较高，一方面这些题目对考生的逻辑思维要求比较高，另一方面对于考生过去时态的运用也有比较高的要求。我们对雅思口语考试真题中的相关考题逐一准备，并且归纳出一些通用内容。

首先大家来看雅思口语考试中的难点考题Environmental Pollution。

Describe the pollution in your region.

You should say:

What the main causes of pollution are.

What an effect of pollution is.

What a specific solution to environmental pollution is.

And explain why it is important to protect the environment.

Pollution has been a serious problem for some time around the world. In my opinion, it has many causes. Transportation is the main factor in pollution. When the exhaust gas from cars is released, the air becomes polluted. Another factor is that people litter everywhere. All kinds of garbage not only spoil the splendid environment but also cause environmental pollution. As a consequence, the greenhouse effect has become a problem which needs our immediate attention. At present, many measures are being taken to prevent pollution. For example, people should consider sorting recycling. Some garbage can be recycled after being collected. We all know that it is our responsibility to love the earth that we depend on. I believe we can prevent pollution if everybody makes an effort.

此题难度较高，需要考生在词汇方面做精心准备，同时答案的构建对考生思路和逻辑组织也提出较高的要求，非常接近雅思写作的提问方式和风格，请各位考生重视此难点！

以下补充一些相关的环境类的词汇。

Environmental Problems 环境问题

The Problems 问题

- pollution: air pollution, water pollution (including oceanic pollution), soil pollution, noise pollution 污染: 空气污染, 水污染(包括海洋污染), 土壤污染, 噪声污染
- global warming 全球变暖
- species loss 物种的灭绝
- deforestation 森林采伐

- desertification 沙漠化
- ozone depletion in the upper atmosphere 高层大气的臭氧层破坏
- waste disposal 废物处理
- water shortage 水资源短缺

Other Related Vocabulary 其他相关词汇

Pollution 污染

- fertilizer 化肥
- factory waste 工厂废料
- rivers and streams 河川
- heavy metals 重金属

Global Warming 全球变暖

- melting of the glaciers and the polar icecaps 冰川和极地冰盖的融化
- extremes of weather 极端恶劣的天气
- the El Nino phenomenon 厄尔尼诺现象
- the greenhouse effect 温室效应
- carbon dioxide, sulphur dioxide 二氧化碳, 二氧化硫
- man-made causes, possible natural causes 人为原因, 可能的自然原因
- fuel 燃料
- fossil fuels 化石燃料
- hydrogen 氢
- wind power, solar power, solar cells 风能, 太阳能, 太阳能电池
- vehicle exhaust 车辆废气
- power station 发电所

Water Shortage 水资源短缺/Waste Disposal 废物处理

- recycling 回收

Desertification 沙漠化

- sand storms (dust storms) 沙尘暴
- overgrazing 过度放牧
- goats (a major cause of desertification) 山羊 (沙漠化的一个重要原因)
- grasslands 草原
- reforestation 重新造林

Species Loss 物种的灭绝

- habitat loss 栖息地的丧失
- ecological balance 生态平衡
- genetic diversity 遗传多样性
- genes, genetic engineering 基因, 基因工程
- natural compounds (from living organisms) 天然化合物 (来自生物有机体)

Soil Salinification 土壤盐化

- the water table 地下水位

► 描述假期

Describe your favorite holiday.

You should say:

When it is.

Where you spent the holiday.

What happened in the holiday.

And explain why you like this holiday.

Last holiday I spent in Italy. It was the best summer time in all my life. I went to this beautiful country by car with all my family. We lived in a great hotel at the coastal. The weather was nice: the sun was shining all the time, the sea was clean and the sand gold. There were a lot of people on the beach every day but it wasn't a big surprise because it was really hot. We tried to visit as many interesting places as we could. At last we decided to go to N, an old and very beautiful town. Although it was very hot and there were traffic jams, we managed to visit old churches and old castles because there it was rather cool. We were in Rome too and in my opinion this is the most beautiful town in the world. Just glamorous! During our trip we ate many kinds of Italian food, for example, pizza and spaghetti. The best pizza I have ever eaten was in a small restaurant in N next to the beach. It was pizza with a

special cheese called mozzarella. I like Italian language very much. This is the most exotic holiday I have ever had, and I always tell my friends about my experience there.

► 描述节日

Describe a festival that is important in your country.

You should say:

How you feel about this festival.

How people celebrate it.

What your family does at this festival.

And explain why this festival is special.

There are many festivals in China, such as Spring Festival, National Day and Lantern Festival, etc. However, Spring Festival is the biggest one in China, and I suppose it is somewhat like Christmas in western countries. At Spring Festival, we typically have about ten days' holiday. Therefore, everyone is eager to go back home and stay with their parents and relatives. All family members look forward to celebrating Spring Festival Eve together, because there are many interesting activities. For example, we will make some dumplings, cook some delicious dishes and sit together watching TV. In addition, on the first morning of Spring Festival, it is customary for us to visit our friends, relatives and colleagues, and send our New Year's greetings. To people who live away from home, Spring Festival is especially important because it's an opportunity for family reunion. So I think most people look forward to this festival the most.

► 描述儿童时代的记忆

Describe an impressive moment from your childhood.

You should say:

When it happened.

Whom you were with at that moment.

What activities happened.

And explain why you think it is so memorable for you.

Thinking back, I'd say my most impressive moment happened when I was a fourth-year student in primary school. I was accompanied by one of my classmates Xiao Ming at that moment. He exerted a very bad influence on me. He convinced me to skip school and go biking with him. We only went to the park and rode our bikes, but for us it was a great adventure. Every little discovery made us feel very grown-up and independent. It sticks in my

memory because I learnt a lot about friendship. For instance, when one of us fell off our bike, the other came to help immediately. In fact, when you grow up, it's hard to find friends like the ones in your childhood.

► 描述参加过的聚会

Describe a party you attended.

You should discuss:

When it was.

Who the host was.

What happened at the party.

And explain how you felt about it.

I'd like to talk about a party I attended last month. Specifically, it was a housewarming party for my good friend and his wife. My friend, the host, is keen on parties. Indeed, he loves organizing get-togethers for his friends. He's a real-estate agent and he spent almost three years finding the perfect home. We had hors d'oeuvres and cocktails and then they gave us a tour of their beautiful house. Everyone brought them some gifts like flowers or wine. On top of that we had a barbecue in their backyard, I felt like the party was a little too formal. I wouldn't have been surprised if they'd hired a caterer. To be honest, I would have preferred a potluck lunch without so much fuss.

除了这些题目之外，其他事件类描述的考试真题还有：

An Unhappy Shopping Experience 一次不愉快的购物经历

A Local Event 当地事件

A Sports Event 体育项目

A Public Event 公共事件

A Traditional Event in Your Country 你们国家的一个传统事件

A Family Event 家庭事件

A Happy Event 愉快事件

An Occasion When You Were Late 你迟到的理由

其中A Local Event, A Public Event和A Traditional Event in Your Country可以套用Festival的内容, A Family Event和A Happy Event可以套用Party的内容。An Occasion When You Were Late也可以说去参加一个Party然后迟到了，或者去看一场比赛迟到了，这样就可以和Sports Event结合起来了，所以考生要学会融会贯通，雅思口语考试的准备工作还是相当轻松的。

第5节 Describing Personal Interests

个人兴趣描述类

Personal Interests方面的考题是雅思口语考试Part 2的主流考题，涉及个人兴趣爱好的各个方面，比如考生喜欢的电影、音乐、季节、交通工具等各个方面，这类问题相对而言比较容易准备，只要把雅思真题吃透，相关的素材准备充分就行。大家接下来把这些考题的具体内容一一浏览，看看高分考生是如何回答这些问题的。

► 描述个人兴趣爱好

Describe an interest or hobby that you particularly enjoy.

You should say:

What this interest or hobby is.

How long you have been doing it.

What contents you are interested in.

And what effect it has had on your life.

I prefer to read newspapers in my spare time. It is true that some people are more interested in television and radio, but I still read newspapers regularly because it's educational and entertaining. I started reading newspapers when I was a primary school student. At that time, we were required to collect news and information from newspapers everyday and share it with our classmates. Now it has become a routine pleasure for me. Of all the contents, I like the front-page news as well as the section on arts and entertainment most. Usually, I first skim through the headlines, and then I read the articles that interest me when I have time. Now reading newspapers has become a part of my life because it keeps me informed about what is happening around the world. As a result, this hobby has broadened my world view.



► 描述电影

Sample A

Describe the best film that you've ever seen.

You should say:

What the film is.

What the film is about.

How often you see it.

And explain what made the movie so appealing to you.

My favorite movie is *The English Patient* and not because it won 9 Oscar Awards in 1997. It is a motion picture about a mapmaker burned in a plane crash. Fortunately the mapmaker was rescued by a Canadian woman who nursed him back to health, during which time he slowly began to remember his life before the accident. I watch this film once a year. Each time I watch it, I can refresh my memory and watching the movie helped me see a lot of things in a different light. I enjoy watching this movie because it touches upon the true meaning of love. What's more, it shows me the importance of cross-cultural understandings. There are lots of races with a variety of cultures and customs in the world. In order to avoid misunderstanding, we've got to learn about other cultures and show our understanding while communicating with other people.



Sample B

Describe a movie that you like.

You should say:

What movie it is.

When you saw this movie.

What the movie is about.

And explain why you like this movie.

The movie I am going to talk about is called *Harry Potter*, which was on in big cinemas not long ago. I saw it last month with some friends. This movie tells that Harry Potter returns to his school of witchcraft and wizardry for his second year of training. Before he returns he is warned by a house elf named Dobby that terrible things await him if he returns to the school. However, Harry is determined to return to the only place that he has ever belonged to in his life, and must once again face a big challenge. This year at school someone will indeed reopen the Chamber of Secrets, which is to bring people a lot of disasters. Finally, Harry and his good friends try their best to discover the truth about the chamber, and save all the people in the school. I have been fond of science fictions, and this movie brought me into a world of magic and wizardry. From this movie, I have also learned to be composed when facing difficulties and be confident.



各位考生在准备电影类题目的时候要注意形成自己的个性化答案，一定要讲自己熟悉的电影，切不可背答案，给考官千篇一律的感觉，否则考试中的分数会很低。

► 描述喜欢的动物

Sample A

Describe your favorite animal.

You should discuss:

What it is.

What the features of this animal are.

What qualities you associate with this animal.

And what kinds of animals people in your country like to have as pets.

I'm really an animal-lover, but if you force me to choose, I'd say lions are my favorite. Lions are widely believed as cold-blooded killers. However, scientific research shows that lions will only attack humans when they're provoked or threatened. The qualities I associate with them are independence and dignity. For one thing, it is very rare for lions to be seen roaming and hunting in large packs. What's more, in the novel *Out of Africa*, lions are depicted as trustworthy creatures. Understandably, most Chinese people don't keep lions for pets. They prefer tame and easy-to-train animals like cats, dogs and birds. Many older people like to keep songbirds. Exotic animals are not as popular here.



注意，雅思口语考试中动物类的描述有时候会变体成describe your favorite pet，这个时候就要注意不能描述野生动物！

还有一道考题是A Domesticated Animal一种家畜，考生讲的内容也要有所变化。

Sample B

Describe an animal / pet that you like.

You should say:

What it is.

What it looks like.

What its living habit is.

And explain why you like this animal / pet.

Magic is a parrot. I got it several months ago from my friends as a birthday gift. It is a green bird with a gray head and a different colored belly and has piercingly bright yellow iris. Some expert told me that it was imported from some African country and such birds originally live in moist woodland and on the edges of the savannah feeding on seeds, fruits and grains.

This little bird makes a good pet. It is so small that I can handle and accommodate it in a medium-sized parrot cage. Apart from its original place, it feeds mainly on oats now. It is never too noisy and learns to talk and imitate sounds such as the creak of the garage door, the ping of the microwave, the ring of the telephone etc. What a clever creature! I have also found this bird can be attached to some people, but can also change their affection to someone else according to the mood. It is much attached to me in particular as we stay together most of the time. My friends like to call it Rainbow because of its beautiful iris, but I call it Magic, as its wonderful imitating ability is just like magic to me. I really love this little lovely bird.



特别注意，parrot（鹦鹉）不要说成carrot（胡萝卜）。我有一次和考官聊天当中听他提起有考生在考场当中把parrot说成carrot，考官只能拼命屏住不笑出来。各位以后不能闹这种笑话哦。

► 描述音乐

Describe the role music plays in your life.

You should say:

Why you like to listen to music.

What music you like most.

Why this kind of music influences you so much.

And what benefits there will be if we let children learn an instrument.

I think music plays a significant role in everyone's life. Just like other forms of art, music has become an indispensable part of human civilization. We are surrounded by music everywhere: at home, on the bus, in the restaurant. It's like nutritious spiritual food for us. You can really be carried away and lose yourself in it. Listening to music can make a person feel refreshed after a hard day's work. My favourite kind of music is classical music because the soothing melody can help me relax. Each time I listen to classical music, I feel good afterwards. What's more, the rhythm and melody are very soft, and I can dance to the music and be swept up in it. The major benefit of letting children learn an instrument is that they can develop their imagination at an early age. Besides, children can develop their concentration and taste as well.



下面附上音乐类型的相关词汇：

General 总体类型

- children's music (including nursery rhymes) 儿童音乐（包括儿歌）
- Latin dance music (e.g. Flamenco, Tango) 拉丁舞音乐（如弗拉门科民歌，探戈）
- electronic (digital) music 电子（数字）音乐
- ethnic and national music (including traditional Chinese music, Chinese opera, folk songs) 民族音乐（包括传统中国音乐，中国戏曲，民歌）
- film music 电影音乐
- religious music 宗教音乐

Classical European Music 欧洲古典乐

- baroque music 巴洛克音乐
- chamber music 室内乐
- orchestral music (such as composed by Mozart, Beethoven, etc.) 管弦乐（如莫扎特、贝多芬等创作的作品）
- opera 歌剧
- ballet music 芭蕾音乐

Modern Popular Music 流行音乐

- bluegrass 蓝草音乐
- blues 布鲁斯音乐
- country and western music 西部乡村乐
- disco music (techno, trance...) 迪斯科音乐（高科技舞曲，迷幻舞曲……）
- hip-hop 嘻哈；美国街头说唱
- jazz (e.g. big band, ragtime) 爵士乐（如爵士乐团，雷格泰姆旋律）
- pop songs 流行歌曲
- rap music 说唱音乐
- reggae 雷鬼乐
- rhythm and blues 节奏布鲁斯
- rock 'n' roll (including rockabilly, heavy metal) 摇滚乐（包括乡村摇滚乐，重金属摇滚乐）

和Music相关的还有下面一道题目:

Describe your favorite song.

You should say:

What song it is.

Where and when you heard the song.

How you felt when listening to it.

And explain why you like this song.

I would like to talk about a classical English song called *Right Here Waiting*. It was recommended by my boyfriend when I entered the university. As soon as I heard this song, I liked it very much.

The song is sung by Richard Marx, a famous American singer. The song tells a romantic love story. Oceans separated a pair of lovers. They missed each other very much every day and the telephone they made to each other could not stop the pain. However, they still loved each other deeply. The time and the distance could not obstruct and reduce their love. The boy told the girl that he would be right here waiting for her whenever and wherever. When I heard the song in the university, I believe this kind of story happened everyday and everywhere among lovers. With the piano accompanied and the magnetic voice of the singer, this song sounds very beautiful.

It is almost years since I graduated from university. And with the time goes by, I now seldom listen to this song. But when I listen to it, it recalls my school time and a lot of sweet memories. And that is also why I still like it a lot.

喜欢周杰伦或者王力宏歌曲的考生也可以谈他们的歌,但是要提前做好充分的语言和内容上的准备,以免翻译的问题和文化差异的问题造成考官不理解所说的内容。

► 描述交通

Describe the transportation in your city.

You should say:

What kinds of transportation are available.

What the traffic situation is like.

How we can improve it.

And explain what measures should be taken to make transportation more efficient.

Well, I think public transport in Shanghai is very convenient. You can go anywhere in a short time by bus or subway. There are a series of well-designed traffic features on the main streets, such as overpasses, underpasses and sidewalks. All of these features offer great convenience for pedestrians. Despite this, it can't be denied that it's very crowded, especially at rush hour. I feel quite frustrated trying to commute to work. I think the government should take measures to solve the problem. For example, it's highly necessary to restrict the number of private cars during rush hour. Moreover, citizens should be encouraged to take buses instead of driving cars. I think convenient transportation / transport can be accessible to all.



考生在准备这道题目的同时要准备一个自己最喜欢的交通工具的描述。

► 描述电视节目

Describe a TV program that made a strong impression on you.

You should say:

Which one it was.

What kind of program it was.

What happened in it.

And explain why it made such a strong impression on you.

Speaking of TV programs, I'd say one of my favorite shows of all time is called *Wulinwaizhuan*. You can translate it to *My Own Swordsman* in English. It was a sitcom but it was also a parody of historical drama. That is to say, the characters all dressed in costumes from Ancient China. The story depicts a group of people who live together and run an inn. hilariously, in each episode, something strange happens to them but it always turns out fine in the end. It made a strong impression on me because there are a lot of famous catchphrases. After every episode, when you went to meet your friends, everyone would be quoting the show. Besides, it's very well-written and funny but it can also be touching and even educational.

考生在这个部分要挑选自己最喜欢的节目类型来说，可以是自己喜欢的美剧，也可以是喜欢的综艺类节目或者是新闻节目，不管选择哪一种，考生要能够连续生动地说满两分钟，中间不能有冷场情况。因此，考生要挑选自己最熟悉、最喜欢的电视节目来讲，而且要注意不能有文化差异，所以建议大家不要谈论涉及历史类和文化类的电视节目！

► 描述喜欢的季节

Sample A

Describe the season that you like best.

You should say:

Which one it is.

What the weather is like.

What you like to do during that season.

And explain why you like it so much.

I have to say that autumn is definitely my favorite season. In my hometown the weather is a little crisp. In fact, after the sweltering heat of summer, it's a real relief. In many days it's a little drizzly, but not too humid. Autumn is the best season to travel. Even though the flowers aren't in bloom, it's less crowded, expensive and hot. What's more, it's also the very season when you can enjoy the freshly harvested fruit. The reason I like autumn the most is that it marks the end of summer. The heat in my hometown is really oppressive. It makes everyone feel so lethargic. Therefore, every year, when autumn comes, I give a big sign of relief.

**Sample B**

Describe a season that you like.

You should say:

What season it is.

What is special with the season.

What people do in this season.

And explain why you like the season.

I guess I would like to talk about autumn. I live in Beijing. You know Beijing is under the influence of the temperate continental climate with four distinct seasons. The summer is hot, rainy and humid, while the autumn is warm and sunny with clear sky and crisp air, the best season of a year. People are bathed in gentle breeze and feel very comfortable. In this season, people are mostly in short sleeves outdoors. Besides the common activities they have, they participate in all kinds of other activities of the season, like going out for a walk, or having a picnic



with friends. Children also like this season, as the weather is just good for them to play in nature, such as playing sand. Autumn is also the best tourism season in Beijing. It is high time to enjoy the scenery of maple trees on Xiangshan Mountain with all the leaves wine red. As someone who likes to enjoy the beauty of nature, I like the autumn best.

关于季节的考题是雅思口语考试中的难点内容，各位考生在准备此题的过程中尽量结合自己喜欢的季节中的各种activities来回答，这样会使自己的答案非常详细而且生动，从而获取高分。

► 描述所感兴趣的文化

Describe a foreign culture that you are interested in.

You should say:

What this culture is.

How you learnt about this culture.

What you know about this culture.

And explain why you feel this culture is interesting.

Even though I'm an English major, I've always been fascinated by French culture. I was first exposed to French films as a freshman in college. My teacher at the time, Madame Dong, turned me on to several great French directors. She was a real Francophile and also introduced us French food, wine and literature.

I think French culture is characterized by a certain attitude towards life. French people like to live in the moment and really enjoy simple pleasures like good food and conversation.

Above all, the reason I'm in love with French culture is that it symbolizes romance and freedom. French people are always in pursuit of what is fashionable and pleasurable. The cliché is that they spend all their time in cafés, but many French people are also earnest and diligent.

这道题目是雅思口语考试第二部分的一道难点题目，考生在回答的时候要注意理解culture的含义，还要注意这道题目要考生说的是Foreign Culture，比如答案中的法国文化。考生同样可以说非洲文化，然后举一些例子说明。如果有些考生对美国比较熟悉也可以谈美国文化。

雅思口语考试真题的个人兴趣爱好类还有以下这些：



A Healthy Habit 有益于健康的习惯（可以联系看电影听音乐等好习惯）

A Childhood Game 儿童游戏（可以联系电视综艺节目中的某些游戏来说）

A Photograph 一张照片（可以联系不同季节的风景照来谈）

Some Interesting News 一些有趣的新闻（可以联系不同国家发生的新闻，从而涉及他们的文化特点来谈）

An Artistic Activity 电影音乐等艺术活动

第6节 *Describing Other Things* 其他描述类

雅思口语考试中还有一些考题不能归类到以上的五个类别中，但是在雅思口语考试的题库中占有重要地位，考试频率比较高。接下来一一分析这些考题。

首先大家来看雅思口语考试中经常考到的一个话题：

Describe a project that you completed successfully.

You should say:

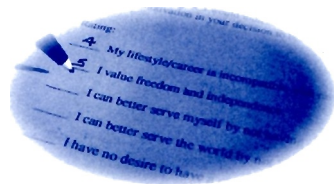
What the project was.

What your goals for the project were.

What problems you encountered.

And explain how you completed the project successfully.

Well, let me tell you about a project I was involved in when I was a third-year student. I worked with ten other students and two mentors on an investigation into the working conditions of Chinese teachers. We designed a questionnaire and each student was responsible for getting twenty of them back. Our goal for the project was to make recommendations to improve teachers' working conditions. In order to achieve it, we needed to get the opinions of at least two hundred teachers so that we could analyze and compare them. During the project, the biggest problem we encountered was that there was no incentive for teachers to return the questionnaire. Even though we sent out almost a thousand of them, we had no luck getting them back. It was really discouraging for the team and a lot of people wanted to just settle for the few we got back. Our mentor suggested that we try face-to-face and phone interviews. At first, it was very intimidating to try to interview older people, but we worked in pairs until we felt more confident. In the end, we got about 120 questionnaires filled out. Although we didn't meet our goal because of time constraints, I felt that the project was successful because we learned a lot about teamwork and built up the know-how to succeed next time.



除了以上的设计问卷项目之外，考生也可以讲arrange a party or basketball game, arrange a singing competition等，关键问题是要讲考生所熟悉的内容。

另外一个难点话题是Skills，雅思口语考试中出现如下的真题：

Describe a skill that you would like to learn.

You should say:

What the skill is.

The best way to learn it.

When you would use it.

And explain why this skill would be useful to you.

I really wish that I was handier around the house... that I could fix things like the air-conditioner, hot-water heater, plumbing, etc.

I'm not sure the best way to learn these kinds of skills, but whenever I go to the bookstore, I notice some books on DIY. I could try to learn that way, but I'm sure I would need a professional to demonstrate some of the more difficult tasks.

I think I would use these skills constantly because I live in an older building and things are always breaking down. It's really infuriating to have to wait a week for a repairman when I could fix the problem myself in five minutes if I had the expertise.

DIY skills would be extremely useful because I could save a lot of money. Even if I didn't know how to solve the problem myself, I would know if someone else was trying to cheat me. I could be more self-reliant and could even help out my friends and family.

考生除了模仿上面参考答案中的DIY skills之外, 还可以说英语口语技能、演讲技能和英语写作技能等跟自身学习相关的技能, 这样才能够在雅思口语考试中发挥出最好的状态。

第三个雅思口语考试其他类话题中的热门考点是广告类话题, 这个话题在雅思口语考试题库中一直都在被使用, 考生对这个话题要引起重视。

Describe an advertisement that made a deep impression on you.

You should say:

What it was advertising.

When you saw it.

What it showed.

And explain why it made such an impression on you.

The advertisement I remember most was part of a fundraising campaign for the Hope Project. Its primary goal was to arouse the interest of the public to help with schooling for disadvantaged children in the countryside.

The campaign had several facets including: TV spots, posters on buses, radio programmes even text books. The advertisements were aired about fifteen years ago in all the major cities.

It showed, for the first time, the desperate longing of many youngsters to get a quality education. I was just one of those deeply shocked by what was portrayed and stirred to action to help the younger generation.

I guess the reason it made such a strong impression on me was the impact it made in the real world. It has been estimated that more than 2.3 million children have realized their dream to go to school in the past 15 years. From this example, we can see how advertising can be used to spotlight important issues and improve people's lives.

上面这个例子是有关于希望工程的广告的，其实考生还有更多的广告可以选择。有关于体育方面的广告很多考生都感兴趣，比如有一个广告品牌是一只钩的，还有一个广告是三片叶子的，这两个品牌喜欢运动的朋友每天都在使用。或者可以讲明星代言的广告，比如成龙代言的佳能相机，周杰伦代言的奶茶广告，或者刘若英代言的电视机广告。“雅思生活化，生活雅思化”是我们生活的原则，也是我们备考雅思的原则。

还有一个要注意的难点话题是：

Describe something you learned from an older person you know.

You should say:

Who taught it to you.

What he or she taught you.

How they taught it to you.

And explain why it made such a deep impression on you.

My grandfather, who withstood many hardships, had a really lasting influence on my personality. He set a good example for how a person should behave.

Out of all his lessons, I'd say generosity is the one which has served me best; not just generosity with money, but also generosity of spirit. He always gave other people the benefit of the doubt and made time to talk with them no matter how busy he was.

He didn't teach me directly but he was a great role model. By watching him interact with his family, friends and even complete strangers, I learned how important it was to be generous with others.

I think his behavior made such a deep impression on me because it's so rare nowadays. Everyone is in a big hurry all the time so we're losing the custom and forgetting the value of generosity. I don't think it should be neglected at any time, like much of the wisdom of our elders.



准备此题的难度在于考生的idea很难形成，造成在考试中冷场的情况。考生对此题应联系人物描述类的话题同时准备。

在雅思口语考试中，商务类的考题也逐渐成为考试的热点，下面这道题目就是一道很流行的考题：

Describe a small business that you would like to own.

You should say:

What this business would be.

How you would start this business.

How you would attract and keep customers.

And explain why you would like to run this kind of business.

I have always dreamed of running a shop selling handcrafted toys. It could be a small operation: just a storefront with a workshop in the back and three or four employees.

To start the business I would first try to find financial backing. Once I found some investor or got a loan from the bank, I could choose a location and outfit the shop.

After that, the biggest challenge would be to attract and retain long-term customers. I think placing advertisement would be a good way to publicize my business. What's more, it would be important to have distinct characteristics and always be innovating, so as to keep our competitive edge. So instead of providing all kinds of goods, I would take special requests from customers.



I'd like to run this kind of business because then my passion could also be my occupation. I've heard that being your own boss is one of the greatest satisfactions in life.

考生在准备这个话题的时候最好结合大学中所学的专业来讨论，这样就可以用大学中所学的知识作为论据，从而在2分钟的回答过程中流畅自如。

雅思口语考试Part 2还有一道很难回答的话题，就是Habit，雅思口语考试有两道跟这个话题有关的，一个是Healthy Habit，还有一个是Unhealthy / Bad Habit，先来看其中一个：

Tell me about one or two bad habit(s) you have.

You should say:

What are they and how long have you had them.

How did you develop them and why couldn't you quit.

Whether many other people have the same bad habits.

And say how you are going to get rid of them.

I would say that my main vice is smoking cigarettes. Actually, I've been indulging in it for more than a decade.

In the beginning, I just saw smoking as a form of psychological comfort. As I grew older, it became a good excuse for interrupting work and snatching a moment of pleasure.

I think smoking is an epidemic in China. Many people offer each other cigarettes as a way to break the ice with a new acquaintance.

But obviously, smoking is bad for our health and has been linked to many diseases, especially cancer. Quitting cold turkey may not be easy, but I'm sure my lungs will thank me for it.

其实考生还可以谈论其他坏习惯，比如网瘾、熬夜等更加生活化的内容，记住我们的雅思生活化的原则哦。

如果要讨论健康的习惯那就更加容易了，可以说保持健身习惯、准时睡觉习惯和多吃水果蔬菜习惯等。

在雅思口语考试Part 2的题目中，还有一些大家要重视的话题：

A Good Law 一条法律

在回答这道题目的时候，考生尽量说与生活相关的法律，比如食品法、交通法、教育法或者是环境保护法等，内容的选择决定了考生考试时的表达流畅度！

A Leader 一位领导

这是一道人物类描述题，但是我把它归为其他类是因为这道题目的特殊性：Leader既可以是一个公司的领导人物，比如Bill Gates、唐骏、松下幸之助，也可以是一个国家的领导人，比如Bill Clinton或者毛主席。

A Meal for Your Friends 为你朋友准备的一顿饭

这道题目的关键是要把meal的具体内容说出来，对于那些在家不做饭的考生来说，这道题目是个难点，所以要做个个性化准备哦。

A New or Exciting Activity 一项新的或刺激的活动

这道题目其实就是Sport的变体。

A Performance 一次表演

这道题目谈论的时候也要把握生活化原则，可以谈论大牌明星的演唱会。

A Piece of Furniture 一件家具

这道题目其实是物体类话题中的一个，但是这道题目归在其他类是因为家具的描述要结合每个人家庭的不同设置和喜好，我觉得在讨论家具话题的时候描述沙发是最好的，因为可以说质地、颜色、款式和价格等。

A Traffic Jam 一次塞车

这道题目在回答的时候要结合之前的transport方面的内容。

A Vehicle You Would Like to Own 你想拥有的一辆车

同样要结合transport话题。

An Adventurous Person 一个爱冒险的人

这个原本是属于人物描述类的，但是这个问题相对而言比较奇怪，建议大家结合体育明星来说，姚明就是一个好例子。

An Open-Air Market 一个露天市场

该问题结合广告和体育内容来说，可以讲卖体育用品的市场。

An Organization 一个组织

这道题目要结合之前所讲的地点类的话题，可以讲KFC，McDonald等餐饮组织，也可以结合体育类话题，比如讲奥委会，或者结合学校内容，讲学生会。

第7节 雅思口语考试Part 2考题大全

A (Good) Neighbour 一位(好)邻居

A Book 一本书

A Book You Enjoyed as a Child 一本你儿时喜爱读的书

A Book You Enjoyed Reading 一本你爱读的书

A Book You Recently Read 一本你最近读的书

A Building in Your Hometown 你家乡的一栋建筑

A Building in Your School or University 你学校的一栋建筑

A Busy Time 繁忙时刻

A Cafe or Restaurant 一家咖啡馆或餐馆

A Character from a Childhood Story 儿时故事里的一个人物

A Child You Know 你了解的一个孩子

A Childhood Activity 一项儿时活动

A Childhood Friend 一位儿时朋友

A Childhood Game 一项儿时游戏

A Childhood Present 儿时收到的一份礼物

A Childhood Song 一首儿时的歌

A Childhood Toy 一个儿时的玩具

A City You Have Visited 一座你参观过的城市

A Class or Course 一次课

A Course You Would Like to Study 你想学习的一门课

A Domesticated Animal 一种家畜

A Family 一个家庭

A Family Event 一项家庭活动

A Family Member 一位家庭成员

A Famous Person 一位名人

A Famous Person You Would Like to Meet 你想遇到的一位名人

- A Film 一部电影
- A Foreign Culture 一种外国文化
- A Friend 一位朋友
- A Future Change 一项未来的变化
- A Future Job 一项将来的工作
- A Garden 一座花园
- A Gift 一件礼物
- A Good Friend 一位好朋友
- A Good Law 一条好法律
- A Happy Childhood Memory 一段快乐的儿时记忆
- A Happy Event 一件开心的事
- A Healthy Habit 一个健康的习惯
- A Home You Like 一个你喜欢的家
- A Hotel 一家旅馆
- A Language Skill 一项语言技能
- A Leader 一位领导
- A Lesson, Class or Training Session 一次课程或培训
- A Library 一座图书馆
- A Local Event 一项地方活动
- A Long Journey 一次长途旅行
- A Magazine 一份杂志
- A Meal for Your Friends 为你朋友准备的一顿饭
- A Modern Building 一座现代建筑
- A New or Exciting Activity 一项新的或刺激的活动
- A Newspaper You Like to Read 你爱读的一份报纸
- A Performance 一次表演
- A Person Who Has Visited Your Home 一个来过你家做客的人
- A Person Who Is Good at His / Her Job 一个工作得心应手的人
- A Person Who Likes to Help Others 一个喜欢帮助他人的人

- A Person Who Took Care of You in Your Childhood 一个在你儿时照顾你的人
- A Person You Enjoy Talking With 一个你乐于和他聊天的人
- A Person You Live with 一个和你一起住的人
- A Person You Visited 一个你看望过的人
- A Person You Would Like to Be Similar to 一个你希望能和他很像的人
- A Photograph 一张照片
- A Physical Activity 一项体育活动
- A Piece of Equipment 一项设备
- A Piece of Furniture 一件家具
- A Piece of Good News 一条好消息
- A Place for Shopping 一个购物去处
- A Place for Swimming 一个游泳的地方
- A Place of Leisure 一个休闲场所
- A Place Where People Listen to Music 一个人们听音乐的场所
- A Place Where You Often Go Shopping 一个你经常去购物的地方
- A Place with Lots of Water 一个有很多水的地方
- A Polluted City 一座被污染的城市
- A Polluted Place 一个被污染的地方
- A Positive Change 一项积极的改变
- A Practical Skill 一项实用技能
- A Project or Homework Assignment 一个项目或家庭作业
- A Public Event 一项公共活动
- A Radio Program 一个广播节目
- A Recent Change 近期的一次改变
- A School Friend 一位学校的朋友
- A Small Business Near Your Home 你家附近的小公司
- A Small Business You Would Like to Own 你想要拥有的一家小公司
- A Special Meal 特殊的一餐
- A Sport You Played in Childhood 你儿时玩的一项运动

- A Sports Event 一项体育赛事
- A Stage in Your Life You Enjoyed 你人生中觉得很享受的一个阶段
- A Stage of Your Life 你人生的一个阶段
- A Success You Have Had 你经历过的一次成功
- A Teenager You Know 你认识的一个青少年
- A Time When You Helped Someone 一次你帮助他人的经历
- A Tourist Attraction 一个旅游胜地
- A Traditional Event in Your Country 你国家的一项传统活动
- A Traffic Jam 一次塞车
- A Trip 一次旅行
- A Trip You Made 你经历过的一次旅行
- A TV Program 一个电视节目
- A Type of Film 一种电影类型
- A Vehicle You Would Like to Own 你想拥有的一辆车
- A Walk 一次散步
- A Way to Relax 一个放松的方法
- A Website 一个网站
- A Wild Animal from Your Country 你国家的一种野生动物
- A Work of Art 一件艺术作品
- An Adventurous Person 一个爱冒险的人
- An Advertisement 一则广告
- An Artistic Activity 一项艺术活动
- An Educational Trip 一次教育旅行
- An E-mail or Postcard 一封邮件或一张明信片
- An English Class Activity 一次英语课堂活动
- An Exhibition 一次展览
- An Historic Site 一座历史古迹
- An Ideal Park 一座理想的公园
- An Important Decision 一个重要的决定

An Important Letter 一封重要的信件

An Important Letter You Received 你收到过的一封重要的信

An Important Letter You Wrote 你写的一封重要的信

An Interesting (Place in a) City You Visited 你参观过的一座有趣的城市（的某个地方）

An Interesting Animal 一种有趣的动物

An Interesting Film 一部有趣的电影

An Interesting Old Person 一位有趣的老人

An Interesting or Unusual Thing You Did Recently 你近期做过的一件有趣的或不寻常的事

An Interesting Subject 一个有趣的主题

An Interesting Talk 一次有趣的谈话

An Occasion When You Were Late 你的一次迟到经历

An Old Person Who You Admire 你崇敬的一位老人

An Open-Air Market 一个露天市场

An Organization 一个组织

An Outdoor Activity 一项户外活动

An Unhappy Shopping Experience 一次不愉快的购物经历

Another Language 另一门语言

Art or Music 艺术或音乐

Clothes 衣服

Clothing for Special Occasions 特殊场合的服装

Favourite Season or Time of a Year (or Month) 最喜欢的季节或一年中最喜欢的时间（或月份）

Favourite Weather 最喜欢的天气

Future Work Plans 未来的工作计划

Ideal Home 理想家庭

Last Weekend 上个周末

Leisure Time 闲暇时间

Meeting Someone Who Spoke a Different Language 与一个说其他语言的人会面

Receiving a Large Sum of Money 收到一大笔钱

School Holidays 学校假期

Some Advice You Received 你收到的一些建议

Some Interesting News 一些有趣的新闻

Some Recent News 近期的一些新闻

Someone Who Does Something Well 擅长做某事的人

Someone Who Is Good at Cooking 擅长做饭的人

Someone You Enjoy Spending Time with 你喜欢和他在一起的人

Something That Helped You Learn a Language 帮助你学习一门语言的东西

Something You Lost 你丢掉了的东西

Something You Made by Hand 你亲手做的东西

Something You Saved for 你存钱买的东西

Something You Want to Buy 你想买的东西

Something You Would Like to Learn 你想要学的东西

Studying IELTS 学习雅思

Success 成功

The Oldest Person You Know 你认识的年纪最大的人

Travel to Somewhere in the World 去世界某地旅游

Two People from the Same Family 两个来自同一家庭的人

Your Childhood Home 你儿时的家

Your Childhood Room 你儿时的房间

Your Favourite Part of Your Hometown 你家乡中最让你喜爱的地方

Your Favourite Season 你最喜欢的季节

Your Work 你的工作

Your Work or Study Place 你工作或学习的地方

第8节 雅思口语考试Part 2八大黄金原则

黄金原则1:

话题归类，一段多用。Part 2的雅思考题有一百多个，但是我们归类之后只有6大主题类别，每个类别的准备内容不需要很多，一个答案可以应用到各种考题，考生所要做的就是考试中灵活应变。

黄金原则2:

充分利用1分钟准备时间，构思答案的内容非常重要，要做好笔记。

黄金原则3:

注意Part 2长段子的连接词使用，如果没有连接词将会失去很多分数。

黄金原则4:

注意过去时态的使用，雅思口语考试Part 2中50%的题目牵涉过去时态。

黄金原则5:

最好说足2分钟时间，确保语言能力充分展现。

黄金原则6:

提示卡上的4个问题最好能全部涉及，否则考生的口语可能说不满2分钟。

黄金原则7:

注意语速，不要太快。太快的话考生在1分钟内就把2分钟内容说完了，造成冷场。太慢的话，2分钟内说不完考官会打断你的内容。

黄金原则8:

尽量表现自然，不要出现背过答案或者准备过答案的感觉，否则会让考官觉得考生在背书，会出现低分现象。

第 5 章

雅思口语考试

Part 3 全攻略



An Analysis of IELTS Speaking Part 3

雅思口语考试Part 3是雅思口语考试中最难的部分, 这个部分所涉及的问题即使用中文回答很多考生都会感到有一定的困难, 更不用说在雅思口语考试的紧张氛围当中了。为了充分应对雅思口语考试第三部分的抽象和深刻的问题, 大家要以准备雅思写作的方式准备雅思口语, 因为两者所牵涉的话题、提问方式和回答方式非常相似。很多用在雅思写作中的素材和论据, 包括观点、理由和例子完全可以在雅思口语和写作中通用。因此, 在准备Part 3的时候, 大家要形成一个自己的素材库, 对于不同话题都要有相应的内容来应付考官的问题, 不至于出现冷场或者答案内容过短的情况。

雅思口语考试Part 3复习建议:

- 以下章节提供的所有例句和回答水平为较高的水准, 考生有可能感到内容较难, 如果碰到这种情况, 请改用简单的词汇和句式结构, 但是内容上要保持原来的水准。

- 写适合自己的答案, 形成个性化的答案, 在Part 3尤其要注重雅思生活化, 考生所举的例子越生活化越好, 不要说自己不熟悉的话题, 否则考官会就你所说的内容继续问下去, 造成非常尴尬的局面, 冷场的情况会层出不穷。为了避免这种情况的发生, 请用自己熟悉的生活化内容作答。

- 和Part 2相同, 把自己回答内容相似的问题归类, 以便考试的时候容易迅速回忆。

- 我在Part 2中间提到过, 论据的积累可以与雅思写作Task 2结合在一起复习, 在Part 3部分, 则完全跟雅思写作Task 2相同, 观点和论据都可以通用, 考生在考试现场要用写作的思维来进行口语的回答。

- 把握几个要点: 逻辑严密, 语言连贯, 语调恰当, 语速适中, 和考官不断眼神交流, 适当运用body language来辅助自己的意思表达, 尽量显得轻松和自然。

- Part 3的回答应该包含较高级的词汇、多样的语法句式、独特的创意以及较深刻的思想。

第1节 雅思口语考试Part 3经典必备句型

第一章中大家已经了解了雅思口语考试Part 2&3的所有话题的范围，要回答好这些话题必须要提高自己的语言能力、逻辑思维能力以及内容扩展能力，因此大家需要掌握大量的实用句型来表达自己的观点和喜好。这里我要指出大家所学的句型并不是套句，也就是说考生学会了这些句型以后可以灵活地换一些内容，但是句子的主体成分不变。而以前大家所了解的套句则是把整句话背出来，到考试的时候原封不动地把这些话说出来。因为不止一个人在背那些套句，几千人甚至上万人都在背，这样就造成了内容雷同和语言雷同的情况，让考官认为考生在背答案。所以大家所要背诵的经典句型绝不是千万人在背诵的烂句，而是可以灵活使用的经典句型！在这一节当中，大家要学习各种功能句型以确保在雅思口语考试第三部分中考生能够展现各种语言技能。

经典句型不嫌多，大家现在就来学习Part 3必用经典句子吧！

☆ I'd say...

例句：I'd say pollution is a serious problem around the world.

翻译：我认为污染是全球所面临的一个严重的问题。

☆ to my mind...

例句：To my mind, we can prevent pollution if everybody recycles.

翻译：我认为，如果每个人都能够做到循环利用，就可以防止污染。

☆ from my point of view...

例句：From my point of view, social development brings lots of pollution.

翻译：依我看，社会的发展带来了许多污染。

☆ as far as I'm concerned...

例句：As far as I'm concerned, recycling garbage is too much trouble.

翻译：对我来说，循环利用废物太麻烦了。

☆ What I want to say is that...

例句：What I want to say is that the biggest problem of transportation is traffic jams.

翻译：我想要说的是，交通最大的问题是交通堵塞。

☆ All I want to say is that...

例句：All I want to say is that the government should invest more money in the

construction of new roads.

翻译：我想要说的是，政府应该投入更多的钱来建设新的道路。

☆ What I think is that...

例句：What I think is that citizens should be encouraged to take buses instead of driving cars.

翻译：我的想法是应该鼓励市民多坐公交车，少开私家车。

☆ What I'm concerned about is that...

例句：What I'm concerned about is that the number of private cars in urban areas keeps increasing while funds for public buses decrease.

翻译：我关注的问题是，城区私家车的数量持续上升，但公交车的资金投入却在减少。

☆ as...

例句：As the chemical industry is responsible for most water pollution, they should pay for the damage that results from it.

翻译：由于化学工业导致了大多数的水污染，所以它应该为由此造成的损失负责。

例句：We need to restrict cars and buses, as exhaust from transportation is a leading cause of air pollution.

翻译：由于交通工具所排废气成为空气污染的主要原因，我们需要控制汽车的使用。

☆ because...

例句：I believe we should be careful in developing the economy because many industries cause serious pollution.

翻译：我认为我们应当慎重发展经济，因为很多产业都造成了严重的污染。

☆ ... and that's why I consider...

例句：The chemical industry causes serious pollution, and that's why I consider careful development to be a top priority.

翻译：由于化学工业导致了严重的污染，所以我认为慎重的发展是最为重要的。

☆ the main reason is that...

例句：I started reading fiction novels regularly when I was a primary school student. The main reason is that they are educational and entertaining.

翻译：自小学起，我就时常阅读科幻小说，主要因为它们寓教于乐。

☆ mainly because...

例句: People like to watch games mainly because they can enrich their leisure time.

翻译: 人们喜爱看比赛主要是因为比赛能充实他们的闲暇生活。

☆ The only reason...

例句: The only reason that I find singing interesting is that I can always renew my friendship by singing karaoke with my friends.

翻译: 使我觉得唱歌有趣的唯一理由是我总是可以通过和我朋友一起唱卡拉OK来重拾友谊。

☆ On account of...

例句: On account of my allergies, I don't play many outdoor sports in the spring and summer.

翻译: 由于我的过敏体质, 我在春夏两季不太做户外运动。

☆ while...

例句: While fast food does not contain all the vitamins we need, it is becoming increasingly popular in China.

翻译: 尽管快餐中并不包含我们需要的所有维生素, 但它在中国还是越来越流行。

☆ although...

例句: Although the restaurant is very small, the menu is quite diverse including western specialties like steak, pizza and French wine.

翻译: 尽管这个餐厅很小, 菜单却非常多样化, 包括牛排、比萨、法国红酒等西餐中的特色食物。

☆ even though...

例句: Nowadays more and more people subsist on tinned or frozen food even though this kind of food is not healthy.

翻译: 尽管罐装或冷冻食品不健康, 但现在越来越多人还是依靠这些食品生活。

☆ even if...

例句: Even if they have time to cook, many people still buy junk food.

翻译: 尽管有时间做饭, 但许多人还是会买垃圾食品。

☆ but...

例句: Commuting by taxi is convenient, but it's too expensive for most people in Shanghai.

翻译：乘出租车出行很便捷，但是对大多数生活在上海的人来说太贵了。

☆ however...

例句：The subway is the most efficient means of transportation. However, at present it only serves the big cities in China.

翻译：地铁是最有效率的交通工具。但是，目前地铁只在中国的大城市运营。

☆ while...

例句：While it's nice to show you can afford it, most people don't really need a car and it doesn't improve their quality of life.

翻译：向别人炫耀你买得起轿车确实不错，但大多数人并不真正需要轿车，并且轿车也不能提高他们的生活质量。

☆ nevertheless...

例句：Many people complain that public transportation is crowded and inconvenient. Nevertheless, if we all want to get to work on time, more people need to take advantage of it.

翻译：许多人抱怨公共交通很拥挤并且不方便。然而，如果我们想准时上班，更多的人需要好好利用它。

☆ whereas...

例句：Most animals cannot survive in the desert, whereas a few cope with the heat well.

翻译：大部分动物无法在沙漠中生存，但少数动物却能轻松地应付高温。

☆ on the one hand, ... while on the other hand

例句：On the one hand, a national park could protect wildlife, while on the other hand, farmers will lose their farmland.

翻译：一方面，国家公园可以保护野生动物，但另一方面农民将要失去他们的农田。

☆ be similar in...

例句：We are very similar in personality.

翻译：我们在性格方面非常相似。

☆ be different in...

例句：We are totally different in looks.

翻译：我们在长相上完全不同。

☆ be complete opposite in...

例句: We are complete opposite in personality.

翻译: 我们在性格上大相径庭。

☆ share...

例句: We share an interest in history.

翻译: 我们对于历史有共同的兴趣。

☆ be more interested in...

例句: Maybe some other people are more interested in television and radio, but I still prefer reading newspapers regularly because it's educational and entertaining.

翻译: 可能某些人更喜欢看电视和听广播, 但是我还是喜欢定期看报纸, 因为报纸既有教育功能又兼备娱乐性。

☆ prefer to...

例句: Rather than travel everywhere, I prefer to stay at home on my holidays.

翻译: 相比到处旅游, 我更喜欢放假待在家里。

☆ would rather...

例句: I'd rather exercise moderately than too much. Otherwise, I feel too tired to stay awake at work.

翻译: 我觉得适量运动比运动过度要好。不然我在工作时会昏昏欲睡。

☆ adore...

例句: She adores music, so I often take her to concerts.

翻译: 她非常喜欢音乐, 所以我经常带她去听音乐会。

☆ there is nothing we enjoy more than...

例句: There is nothing we enjoy more than sports.

翻译: 我们最喜欢运动。

☆ especially love...

例句: Both of us especially love fast food, and we often go to McDonald's or KFC together.

翻译: 我们两个都特别喜欢快餐, 所以我们经常一起去麦当劳或肯德基。

☆ I cannot find the words to express how much I like...

例句: I cannot find the words to express how much I like her.

翻译: 没有语言能够表达我对她的喜爱。

☆ As I recall...

例句: As I recall, when I was in primary school, we learned everything by rote.

翻译: 我记得我读小学的时候, 我们学东西都是死记硬背的。

☆ It reminds me of when...

例句: It reminds me of when I first discovered my interest in painting.

翻译: 它使我想起我第一次发现自己对绘画感兴趣的时候。

☆ I can still remember the time...

例句: I can still remember the time I came home late and my parents almost locked me out. I learned a very valuable lesson.

翻译: 我依然记得那次我回家晚了, 我的父母差点儿把我锁在门外。我学到了非常宝贵的一课。

☆ I'll never forget the time...

例句: I'll never forget the time my friends and I spent all our pocket money on video games.

翻译: 我永远不会忘记当时我和朋友把所有的零花钱都用在电子游戏上。

☆ Nowadays

例句: Nowadays, teachers encourage their students to be more imaginative.

翻译: 如今, 教师鼓励学生要更富有想象力。

☆ These days

例句: These days, I have totally different opinions from when I was a child.

翻译: 我现在的观点和我孩提时代的观点完全不同。

☆ Recently / Lately

例句: Recently, I have been making an effort to be more considerate of others.

翻译: 最近, 我努力让自己变得更为他人着想。

☆ as of late

例句: School tuition has gotten more and more expensive as of late.

翻译：近来，学费变得越来越昂贵。

☆ the main advantage of... is...

例句：The main advantage of having artists and musicians in society is that they reflect back to us the important things in life which are so easy to forget.

翻译：社会上存在艺术家和音乐家的主要好处是他们可以将生活中那些重要却容易被遗忘的事物表现给我们。

☆ one drawback of... is...

例句：One drawback of music videos is that they often limit the audience's interpretation of the song.

翻译：音乐录影带的一个缺点是它限制了受众对歌曲的理解。

☆ the benefit of... exceeds its negatives

例句：The benefit of subsidizing the arts far exceeds its negatives. The cost is small, but society is greatly enriched.

翻译：资助艺术事业的获益远胜于负面影响。不仅成本很小，而且社会可以获益很多。

☆ it is a mixed blessing that...

例句：It is a mixed blessing that rap music is so prevalent. Many songs are quite poetic, but many are also disrespectful.

翻译：说唱音乐的流行有利有弊。许多歌曲具有诗韵，但也有许多歌曲比较粗俗。

☆ I feel / find that...

例句：I'm no prude but I feel that scenes of sex, violence, and drugs should result in a more restrictive film rating.

翻译：不是我过于拘谨，我觉得性、暴力及毒品场面应该在电影评级中提高限制。

☆ I was surprised by / that...

例句：I was very much surprised by the scenes of drug use in the movie which should be banned altogether.

翻译：我对于电影中出现的吸毒场景感到非常诧异，这些场景应该被全部禁止。

☆ It is amazing that...

例句：It is amazing that the film has won so many Oscar Awards.

翻译：这部影片获得了那么多奥斯卡奖项令人感到惊奇。

☆ be drawn in by...

例句: I was quickly drawn in by the complex characters and tightly-paced plot.

翻译: 我很快就被复杂的角色和快节奏的情节吸引住了。

☆ I agree with you that...

例句: I agree with you that after McDonald's and KFC arrived in China, too many people began to depend on them for daily diet.

翻译: 我同意你的观点, 在麦当劳和肯德基来到中国后, 过多的人依赖它们作为日常饮食。

☆ I am with you that...

例句: I am with you that smokers should be separated from non-smokers in a restaurant.

翻译: 我同意你的观点, 在餐厅中吸烟者和不吸烟者应该分开。

☆ It's easy to agree that...

例句: It's easy to agree that first class service and experienced chefs make all the difference in any dining experience.

翻译: 我同意这个观点, 那就是在外出就餐的体验中, 一流的服务和经验丰富的主厨是至关重要的。

☆ I can not agree with you more that...

例句: I can not agree with you more that eating a nutritionally balanced diet and enjoying a slower pace of life contribute to good health and longevity.

翻译: 我们的观点完全一致, 即营养均衡的饮食和慢节奏的生活有助于健康和长寿。

☆ such as...

例句: Children's softer fingers and palms are an advantage when learning stringed instruments, such as the guitar.

翻译: 在学习弦乐器, 比如学吉他的时候, 儿童柔软的手指和手掌是一大优势。

☆ namely...

例句: The most distinguished classical composers were all born and bred in Germany, namely Bach, Beethoven and Mozart.

翻译: 最杰出的古典音乐作曲家都是在德国出生和成长的, 例如巴赫、贝多芬和莫扎特。

☆ ...to name but a few

例句: I find many kinds of music relaxing: jazz, rhythm and blues, rock and pop music to name but a few.

翻译: 我发现许多音乐可以让人放松, 比如爵士、节奏布鲁斯、摇滚及流行乐, 这里就不一一列举了。

☆ take something as an example...

例句: Some musical genres are more influential than others. Take soul as an example, you can see its effects in hip-hop, R&B and even rap music.

翻译: 一些音乐类型比其他类型更具影响力, 以黑人灵歌为例, 你可以在嘻哈, 节奏布鲁斯, 甚至说唱音乐中发现它的影响力。

☆ ...that I've found... is...

例句: The type of movie that I've found most educational is documentaries.

翻译: 我觉得最有教育意义的电影类型是纪录片。

☆ I'm going to discuss...

例句: I'm going to discuss a movie that I found absolutely thrilling.

翻译: 我想要谈谈一部我觉得非常惊心动魄的影片。

☆ ...that I'd like to talk about is...

例句: The movie that I'd like to talk about is *Alien* because it brilliantly combines elements of science fiction, horror and action movies.

翻译: 我想谈论的电影是《异形》, 因为它完美地结合了科幻、恐怖以及动作电影的元素。

☆ I would like to talk about...

例句: I would like to talk about the movie *The English Patient*, a motion picture about a Hungarian mapmaker who was horribly burned when his plane crashed during World War II.

翻译: 我想要谈谈一部叫做《英国病人》的影片, 该片讲述了一位匈牙利籍制图师在第二次世界大战中由于飞机坠毁而严重烧伤。

☆ I think we should...

例句: I think we should impose tougher laws on animal traffickers.

翻译: 我认为我们应当对贩卖动物者施加更严厉的法律措施。

☆ maybe we should...

例句: Maybe we should carry out more research on animals in their natural habitats.

翻译: 也许我们应该对生活在自然栖息地的动物进行更多的研究。

☆ we'd better / best...

例句: We'd better raise children's awareness of the importance of wildlife conservation.

翻译: 我们最好能增强孩子们对动物保护重要性的意识。

☆ I'd recommend / suggest that...

例句: I'd recommend that we have more habitat preserves than zoos.

翻译: 我建议我们应该拥有更多的动物栖息保护地, 而不是更多的动物园。

☆ I doubt...

例句: I doubt if many younger people could remember the history behind traditional festivals.

翻译: 我怀疑许多年轻人是否还记得传统节日背后的历史。

例句: I doubt that people will light many fireworks if it rains during Spring Festival.

翻译: 我不确定, 要是下雨, 人们还会不会在春节期间放烟火。

☆ I am positive that...

例句: I am positive that more and more decorations for western festivals will be seen in China, even if few people really celebrate them.

翻译: 我相信西方节日的装饰在中国会越来越多, 即使很少有人会真正地庆祝这些节日。

☆ I would speculate...

例句: I would speculate that if we had more holidays, fewer people would observe them.

翻译: 我猜想如果我们节日更多, 庆祝的人反而更少。

☆ in addition (to)

例句: In addition to cards, many other love tokens are exchanged on Valentine's Day.

翻译: 除了卡片, 还有一些其他象征爱的礼物在情人节被交换。

☆ as well as...

例句: Mid-Autumn Festival is a chance to remember friends and family who are far away as well as to enjoy the company of those who are close by.

翻译：中秋节是一个时机，让我们想念远方的亲人和朋友，同时也享受身边的人的陪伴。

☆ What's more...

例句：What's more, the lantern decorations on the streets add to the festival atmosphere and symbolize good luck in the new year.

翻译：更重要的是，街上的灯笼装饰增添了节日气氛，也象征着新年好运。

☆ Not only... but also...

例句：Spring Festival is not only celebrated by people in China, but also by ethnic Chinese around the world.

翻译：不仅在中国的人们会庆祝春节，全世界所有中国人都会庆祝这个节日。

☆ for the most part...

例句：For the most part, the first person in my house to get the remote control gets to pick the program.

翻译：在大多数情况下，我家第一个拿到遥控器的人能挑选电视节目。

☆ in general...

例句：In general, people like talent searches because they also dream about becoming famous.

翻译：总的来说，人们喜欢人才发掘节目，因为他们同样梦想成名。

☆ in most cases...

例句：In most cases, cable programs are more entertaining than the ones on network TV.

翻译：在大多数情况下，有线电视节目比网络电视节目娱乐性更强。

☆ on the whole...

例句：On the whole, documentaries deal with history or science, but some depict the lives of ordinary people.

翻译：总的来说，纪录片涉及的内容是历史或科学，但也有一些是描述普通人生活的。

☆ ...is a crucial problem...

例句：Getting couch potato kids to exercise is a crucial problem for many parents.

翻译：让沉迷于电视的孩子去做运动对许多父母来说是个至关重要的问题。

☆ play a big part in...

例句：What we watch on television plays a big part in our daily lives and conversations.

翻译：我们在电视上看到的内容对我们的日常生活和对话有重要影响。

☆ It's important to stress that...

例句：It's important to stress that parents should limit the amount of TV their young children watch.

翻译：强调这一点很重要：父母应该限制孩子看电视的时间。

☆ We shouldn't underestimate the importance of...

例句：We shouldn't underestimate the importance of restricting violence on television.

翻译：我们绝不能低估限制电视上出现暴力的重要性。

☆ As a result of...

例句：As a result of technological innovations, our lives are longer and better than ever.

翻译：由于技术创新，我们的寿命更长了，生活更好了。

☆ Thanks to,...

例句：Thanks to online communities like Facebook, we can meet people who live thousands of miles away.

翻译：多亏了“Facebook”这样的网上社区，让我们可以认识远在千里之外的人们。

☆ On account of...

例句：It takes a long time for me to download files, on account of my slow connection speed.

翻译：由于网速太慢，我要花很长时间下载文件。

☆ Due to...

例句：Due to the mistakes of the past, we are now more careful about developing technology that could be harmful.

翻译：鉴于过去的错误，现在在开发可能产生危害的技术时，我们会更为谨慎。

How to argue from a hypothetical situation

☆ If...

例句：If advances in ethics do not match advances in technology, we could easily destroy our planet.

翻译：如果道德进步和技术进步不同步，地球将会被我们轻易摧毁。

☆ Unless...

例句：Unless plans are made to educate poor children, they could be less tech-savvy

than their peers.

翻译：除非我们为贫困儿童制订教育计划，否则他们不会像同辈人一样精通技术。

☆ without...

例句：Without many household appliances we take for granted today, we could never have reached our current level of civilization.

翻译：今天，我们把使用家用电器视作理所当然，但如果没有这些家用电器，我们不可能达到今天的文明水平。

☆ If it hadn't been for...

例句：If it hadn't been for the invention of computers, our lives would be much more boring.

翻译：要不是发明了计算机，我们的生活会更加枯燥乏味。

☆ I imagine...

例句：I imagine giving red envelopes at weddings symbolizes the guests' blessing for the couple.

翻译：我猜测在婚礼上给新人红包象征着宾客们对这对夫妇的祝福。

☆ I suppose...

例句：I suppose we wear a red anklet every twelve years out of habit rather than a real fear.

翻译：我认为我们每过十二年都要穿上红色短袜是出于习惯而非真正出于恐惧。

☆ If I were to guess, I'd say...

例句：If I were to guess, I'd say most young couples have a big wedding ceremony to please their parents.

翻译：如果要我猜，我会说大多数年轻夫妇举办盛大的结婚典礼是为了取悦他们的父母。

☆ I'll take a wild guess and say...

例句：I'll take a wild guess and say fancy dress parties aren't very popular in China because most people can't afford them.

翻译：我愿意作出一个大胆的猜想：化装舞会在中国并不非常受欢迎，因为大多数人无法承担费用。

☆ In my experience...

例句: In my experience, people who give lavish gifts, usually expect the same in return.

翻译: 依我的经验来看, 那些赠送昂贵礼物的人, 往往也想得到同样的回报。

☆ Based on my experience...

例句: Based on my experience, company employees usually put on a better show at the annual party than professional entertainers.

翻译: 根据我的经验, 公司职员在年会上的表现往往比专业演员还出色。

☆ Something similar happened to me...

例句: Something similar happened to me at my mother's retirement party.

翻译: 我在我母亲的退休宴会上遇到了类似的事情。

☆ I can tell you from personal experience...

例句: I can tell you from personal experience that bringing KFC to a potluck dinner is not a good idea.

翻译: 根据个人经验, 我可以告诉你, 把肯德基带到家常晚宴上不是个好主意。

☆ if it were up to me, I'd...

例句: If it were up to me, I'd put tighter restrictions on carbon dioxide emissions from cars.

翻译: 如果由我决定, 我会对汽车排放的二氧化碳作出更严格的限制。

☆ one solution might be to...

例句: One solution might be to plant more trees in polluted areas.

翻译: 在受污染区域植更多的树, 可能会是一个解决方法。

☆ the only solution I can see is to...

例句: The only solution I can see is to improve the public transportation system.

翻译: 我能想到的唯一解决办法是改善公共交通系统。

☆ as for how to solve the problem...

例句: As for how to solve the problem, everyone needs to reduce their carbon footprint.

翻译: 至于如何解决这个问题, 每个人都需要降低他们的碳足迹。

☆ a big part of... is...

例句: A big part of success is having the right attitude.

翻译: 成功很重要的一部分是要有正确的态度。

☆ speaking of... I'd say it's...

例句: Speaking of success, I'd say it's more than the end-result.

翻译: 说到成功, 我认为它不仅是一个最终的结果。

☆ by... I mean...

例句: By success, I mean the level of commitment you put into your work.

翻译: 说到成功, 我指的是你对于工作的投入程度。

☆ one way to define... might be to say...

例句: One way to define success might be to say it's the end-result of all your hard work.

翻译: 成功的定义之一也许是你所有努力工作的最终结果。

☆ first of all...

例句: First of all, you should have the know-how to make your dreams come true.

翻译: 首先, 你必须掌握让你梦想成真的做事技巧。

☆ to begin with...

例句: To begin with, finding the right mentor can make all the difference.

翻译: 首先, 找到合适的导师关系重大。

☆ for one thing...

例句: For one thing, failure is an inevitable part of our lives.

翻译: 首先, 失败是我们生活中不可避免的一部分。

☆ where to start... well...

例句: Where to start... well, optimism and idealism are extremely important.

翻译: 从哪儿开始说好呢……好吧, 乐观和理想主义都是极其重要的。

第2节 雅思口语考试Part 3经典思路汇总

雅思口语考试Part 3要取得高分, 思路往往比语言来得重要, 因为考生想要在考试中完全展现近阶段所新学的词汇和句型几乎是不可能的。在Part 3的考试过程中, 考生应该以清晰的思路和严密的逻辑来取得分数优势, 而不是以词汇的深奥和句型的复杂来显示考生的口语复杂程度。因此我们要分析各种不同话题的回答方式和思路展现, 从而学到获得高分的方法, 也可以举一反三, 应用到各种话题中去。

► Hobby类话题思路解析

Q: Is it dangerous for people to spend too much time on hobbies?

明确回答问题, 给出中立观点。可以从正反两方面进行阐述: 一方面, 适当地从事兴趣爱好对人们身心有好处。另一方面, 过度沉溺于兴趣爱好可能造成不良影响。

A: It depends. If we do a lot of entertaining indoor (室内的) and outdoor (室外的) activities, we can develop not only our spirit (精神) but also our physical body (身体). But if we overindulge in hobbies and neglect our many social responsibilities (社会责任), the result could be harmful.

Q: Do you think hobbies are beneficial to social life?

用完整句回答问题以争取思考时间。解释说明论证观点, 列举各种好处 (如丰富社会生活, 促进友谊, 甚至产生经济效益)。

A: Yes. I think hobbies are a meaningful (有意义的) aspect of social life. People will engage in the activities they take a fancy to (喜爱) and have fun together, thus they can enjoy a life full of social activities (社会活动) and make friends with whomever they share interests with. Furthermore, taking up certain hobbies like weaving (编织) or carving (雕刻) can even yield / produce financial profit (产生经济效益).

Q: What are the advantages and disadvantages of watching games as compared to playing games?

对比两者的好处或坏处, 注意连接词的使用。

A: Taking part in sports can keep us fit and healthy (健康的), and it also gives us a sense of involvement (参与). On the other hand, watching games is a kind of entertainment / recreation (娱乐) which helps us relax after a tough day at work.

Q: What sports do you think demand lots of courage?

可先全面地回答问题 (指出各种运动都需要勇气), 再具体提出一种认为最需要勇气的运动并说明理由。

A: Every sport requires courage / guts (勇气) and perseverance / persistence (坚持). I believe football requires the most courage from its players. It's very dangerous and sometimes they will get / be hurt (受伤).

► Cooking and Food类话题思路解析

Q: Have the eating habits of Chinese people changed much over the years?

首先，用“是”或“否”回答一般疑问句中的问题，表述观点。其次，过去现在作对比并给出具体例子，并且要注意时态变化。

A: Yes, of course. Chinese people's dietary habits (饮食习惯) are undergoing a drastic change. In the past, diets were very monotonous (单调的，单一的) and meat was regarded as a delicacy, but now you can have whatever comes to your mind and vegetables (蔬菜) are considered nutritious (营养的). We begin to think more about food quality (质量) than quantity (数量).

Q: What changes will take place in people's eating habits in the future?

先用一句完整的句子简单回答一下问题，同时留出时间思考如何支持观点，然后用细节进一步详细解释说明。

A: People will not be so particular about (挑剔的) food. They will regard food as a fuel for life rather than a pleasure. The process of cooking will be simplified (简化).

Q: What are the advantages and disadvantages of inviting a friend to your home for dinner instead of going to a restaurant?

通过对比和假设条件句引出两方面讨论。

A: If you invite a friend to your home, you have to take time to cook, but you will have a good atmosphere (气氛) while eating because you can listen to music and chat. If you go to a restaurant, you'll save energy but maybe the food won't be as tasty (美味的，好吃的) as you expect or maybe it won't be clean.

Q: What changes have taken place in the Chinese diet?

过去现在对比，并加以例子说明。

A: In the past, Chinese people considered meat a delicacy, and now, with the improvement of standard of living (生活水平，生活标准), vegetables are becoming more and more central to our diet (饮食). China is facing a great challenge (挑战) because of the competition with fast food (快餐). After McDonald's and KFC came into China's market, cheap, convenient but unhealthy food became a staple (主食) rather than a treat.

► Music类话题思路解析

Q: It's often easier for children to learn music than adults. Can you tell me why?

用分类列举说出各种原因，可使用指代或连接词使回答更加紧凑。

A: Oh, because it's important to have soft fingers (手指) and palms (手掌) to learn a musical instrument (乐器), such as the guitar (吉他). Children have more flexible fingers, and they are more likely to find the correct position. Their intuition (直觉) is better than adults.

Q: What are the benefits to society of having artists and musicians?

分类描述艺术家或音乐家这类职业对于社会的好处，可从社会角度和艺术家个人角度分开阐述。

A: The main advantage / benefit (好处) of having artists and musicians in society is that the beauty of life can be captured and presented. And for people with artistic talent(s) / gifts(才能), they can pursue a career / vocation (职业) which lets them express themselves.

Q: What are the differences in music between China and western countries?

说出东西方音乐的不同之处，如曲调和音阶，并可以辅以原因。

A: Oh, in general, most Chinese musical pieces are slower (缓慢的) and have a higher pitch (音高) than western ones. This is largely due to the difference of the instruments used in a piece of music.

Q: What effects do you think there will be if we let children or students learn an instrument?

先陈述观点，即考生个人认为音乐对孩子的影响是正面还是负面的，在这里显然只能说正面观点，然后详细描述几个好处并拓展其可能带来的积极影响。

A: Musical training has many benefits for children. It can increase their imagination (想象力) and creativity (创造力) and even their mathematical ability. Also, it helps them develop their taste (品位) in music. And with the general level of music appreciation (音乐鉴赏) being improved among our younger generation (年轻的一代), the standard of civilization of our society will certainly go up.

► Traffic and Transport类话题思路解析

Q: Can you imagine the transportation of the future and describe it for me?

首先，用是或否回答一般疑问句中的问题，表述观点。其次，陈述将来有哪些新的交通形式，以支持观点。

A: Sure. With the rapid development of energy (能源) technologies, I believe new cars powered by natural gas (天然气) or solar energy (太阳能) will be popular in future. Streets will no longer be crowded (拥挤的). Instead, the air will be clean and the sky will be blue.

Q: What technology can be used to improve public transportation?

先用一句完整的句子简单回答一下问题，同时留出时间思考如何支持观点。然后可以具体说明如何发展公共交通。

A: Well, there are a lot of measures to be taken to develop public transportation. We can develop the monitoring systems (监督体系) with computers and make the traffic system more efficient (有效率的) and effective (有效的). Sometimes it's extremely crowded on the bus and sometimes there are only one or two passengers (乘客).

Q: What causes traffic problem?

按照逻辑思维说明三个原因，适当运用连接词。

A: Well, the number of vehicles (车辆) is increasing much more rapidly than the construction (建设) of roads. Besides, there seems to be too many private cars (私家车) and not enough buses. What's more, many people, including drivers (司机), pedestrians (行人) and cyclists(骑自行车的人) do not obey traffic rules properly.

Q: What could the government do to solve the problem of traffic congestion?

说明一下政府应尽的责任和采取的措施。

A: The government should invest (投资) more money in the construction of new roads and the maintenance (维护) of old ones, particularly those in city centers. Also, the number of private cars in urban areas (市区) should be limited while the number of public buses should be increased. At the same time, it's essential that strict traffic rules and regulations (法规) be enforced.

► Festival 类话题思路解析

Q: What gifts do people send at Spring Festival?

先简单介绍一下人们通常要在这个节日期间拜访亲戚朋友、送礼。后面从一般常见的节日礼物说起，然后说到 *lucky money* 这个传统礼物，体现出它的不同之处，完成整个回答。

A: On New Year's Day, we will put on our new clothes to visit our relatives (亲戚) and friends (朋友), giving New Year's greetings (问候) and exchanging presents (互换礼物), such

as food, wine, flowers and so on. Younger people get “lucky money (压岁钱)” from the older generation (一代, 一代人) to mark their growing one year older, and employees often get a “thirteenth month” bonus (奖金, 分红) from their bosses.

Q: Do Chinese people celebrate western festivals?

先给出一个肯定回答, 然后具体展开说明, 如果觉得这样的问题比较抽象, 大家可以通过举例子这样的方法将问题具体化, 比如用 *Christmas* 举例, 使回答更详细, 也相对易表达。

A: Yes, some western festivals are celebrated by an increasing number of Chinese people. Almost all the young people in big cities celebrate Christmas, although it is more commercial (商业的) and doesn't have the same religious significance (宗教意义). But you can feel a strong festival atmosphere (节日气氛) on December 25th as Christmas decorations (装饰) are everywhere. Celebrating Valentine's Day (情人节) is also quite popular.

Q: Is there any difference between the way people celebrated festivals in the past and how they celebrate them now in China?

先给出一个肯定回答, 然后展开答案内容, 从因果角度, 对自己的观点进行证明。

A: Sure. The living standard (生活水平) in China is higher and some families go out to have a party in restaurants (餐厅) during the Spring festival (春节), which was very unusual in the past.

Q: Could you tell me why people would throw a party?

针对这种问题不可能是一个准确的回答, 会有多个选择, 多个场合需要说到。大家只需将这些情况和场合并列在这里就可以了。

A: In China, people use any excuse to throw a party. Parents often hold parties to celebrate their child's birthday (生日). There are big parties for Spring Festival, Valentine's Day, Mid-Autumn Festival (中秋节), Dragon Boat Festival (端午节), and on and on. Many people often throw parties when they start or leave a job, get married (结婚), have a baby or when they move to a new town.

► Family类话题思路解析

Q: What do you think of the changes in family structure in the past years?

问到某样事物的变化, 首先是对之前和现在的情况进行一下说明。所以答案第一句就是说过去的情况。然后用一个转折词, 说明接下来要讲的是现在的情况。

A: There have been a lot of changes, not all of them are good. In the past, there were a

lot of extended families (大家庭). There were many children in the same family, and often the grandparents (祖父母) lived with them. So in China, it was common for four generations to live under the same roof (住在一起). But at present, China has implemented the one-child policy (独生子女政策) and it is more common for married couples to want their own apartment. It puts a lot of strain on working families.

Q: What is your opinion of the one-child policy?

首先表明自己支持这个政策, 其次说明原因, 最后总结这个政策对社会有益。

A: I agree with the one-child policy because it is difficult to provide enough food (食物) and education (教育) for a large number of people. Overpopulation (人口过多, 人口过剩) puts a great strain on the environment (环境) as well. Any short-term (短期的) hardships are definitely outweighed by the long-term (长期的) benefits to society and to the planet.

Q: How do you think it will affect the society?

先给出自己的看法, 说明影响是正面的, 接下来通过一些具体信息证明自己的观点。

A: Overall, it is beneficial to (有益于) society. Parents have more time to spend with their children and they can know what is going on with them. Also, giving children a good education in China is very expensive (昂贵的) and competitive (竞争激烈的). Having fewer children relieves families of a lot of financial pressure (经济压力).

Q: What has the government done to support families?

列举两到三个政府提供的补助措施。

A: The government has some welfare programs (福利项目) which help support poor families to meet the most basic living standard (基本生活水平) and improve their children's educational conditions. Besides, our government has established some institutions to provide food and accommodation (住处, 膳宿) for old people without families.

► Children类话题思路解析

唯一QQ: 2029808

Q: What kinds of problems exist nowadays in primary and middle school education?

先罗列两三个存在的问题, 然后挑其中一个问题具体谈一下, 可以从正反两方面论述。

A: I'd say over-scheduling, large-class sizes and parental expectations (期望, 期待). The last one is the hardest to solve. On the one hand, parents expect their children to be perfect (完美的). But on the other hand, they over-indulge (溺爱, 纵容) their children and don't instill real respect (尊重) for the teachers in them.

Q: What is the difference between the way children are educated nowadays and in the past?

先谈一下现在的状况，举个例子，然后对比一下过去的情况，最后可以总结一下原因在于生活水平的提高。

A: Let's start with nowadays. First, education is extremely expensive (昂贵的) in China. For example, tuition (学费) for a child at an international bilingual school (双语学校) in Shanghai would be at least, RMB7000 a year. In the past, most parents couldn't afford tuition fees, so only boys were well educated. In conclusion, I think the main reason is because of the increasing living standard.

Q: How has the relationship between parents and children changed in the last 15 years?

先说明是什么原因导致了这一变化，接下来就要谈谈现在的状况了，最后要给出结论。

A: I'd argue that most changes in parent-child relationship in China are the result of the one-child policy (独生子女政策). Now the family pattern has changed to four grandparents and two parents all looking after only one child. Before children were taught filial piety (孝顺) and respect for their / the elders (尊敬老人), but now many children have become little emperors (小皇帝). Honestly, many Chinese kids these days are spoiled (被宠坏).

Q: What's your opinion about the future of Chinese education?

先要谦虚地表示自己不清楚，之后再给出自己的想法，最后要表达一下对中国教育未来乐观的期待。

A: Honestly, I'm no expert, but in my experience education in China is still a little too strict (严格的, 严厉的) and focused on memorization (记住, 熟记). I hope in the future teachers can encourage students to have more imagination (想象力) and to be more considerate (考虑周到的) and thoughtful (深思的) around other people. The goal of education should be to create productive citizens, not just to pass exams.

► TV program类话题思路解析

Q: How do you think television affects society?

先表明自己的观点，有影响，但不是特别重大。列举一些别人的看法，阐述自己的结论，再用一些例子支持。

A: I think it has a big effect, but not as big as some people claim. Some say that watching TV creates a lot of couch potatoes (成天躺在沙发上看电视的人) and makes people stupid; or that it makes people more violent. But I think for the most part people know the difference between fiction and reality (现实) and a lot of programs like documentaries (纪录片) or quiz shows (智力竞赛节目) are very informative.

Q: Do you think we should control television in some way?

表明自己的观点，例如政府应该在这件事上起到重要作用，列举两三个应该实行的措施，比如限制暴力和毒品镜头，限制烟草广告等。

A: I think the government should play a big part in supporting educational and arts programming. And it's reasonable to put limits on (限制) depictions of things like violence (暴力) or drug use at least during prime time (黄金时间). We should also limit advertisements for things like cigarettes while impressionable (易受影响的) children might be watching.

Q: What will TV be like in the future?

先表明观点，如网络会对未来的电视产生重要的影响。然后从两个方面具体阐述：一方面，观众看电视的时间会更加灵活；另一方面，电视互动性会更强。

A: I'd say we shouldn't underestimate (低估) the importance of the Internet on TV in the future. Viewers won't want to wait a week to catch up on the latest episode (集, 一集) of their favorite series. TV will have to offer a lot more flexible (灵活的, 有弹性的) programming so people can watch shows when they want to. And it will become more interactive (互动的, 交互的). The audience will be able to control what happens on the program.

► Science and Technology类话题思路解析

Q: What are some kinds of technology that you use regularly?

先表明自己每天都使用家用电器，然后针对自己的喜好，列举一两样其他技术产品，比如MP3这样的娱乐产品，最后介绍一下自己一般怎么购买这些产品。

A: Obviously, I use a lot of everyday household appliances (家用电器). I'm also really interested in music and movies so I use a lot of technology related to entertainment (娱乐) like MP3 players. I want to buy a digital camera (数码相机). They're still a little expensive, but you can go to online auction (拍卖) sites like taobao.com and buy them secondhand.

Q: How would your life be different without these technologies?

表明自己的看法：这个问题比较难说。说明这些技术的优点：节省时间。举一两个例子支持观点。说明这些技术的缺点：会让人上瘾。最后做出总结。

A: It's hard to say. In fact, it seems like technologies save us a lot of time. For example, with washing machines (洗衣机) we no longer have to wash clothes by hand or with refrigerators (冰箱) we no longer have to buy fresh food every day. But, on the other hand, some kinds of entertainment technologies like instant messaging (即时消息) are so addictive (让人上瘾的) that it seems like we have less free time than ever. I would guess that without technology, life would not only be less convenient, but also maybe a little less hectic.

Q: Do you think we have grown too dependent on technology?

先表明自己同意这个看法并做出具体阐述, 然后说明这个问题的另一面: 数字鸿沟。

A: I agree we are very dependent on technology for our everyday lives, entertainment and even health. If we went back to the Stone Age (石器时代), I don't think most people would be able to survive (生存, 存活). But a bigger problem that arises from our dependence on technology is the digital divide (数字鸿沟). Poorer children will be less tech-savvy (精通技术的) than their peers (同辈) and won't have as many opportunities.

Q: What technologies that we use today will be outdated in the future?

先用一句话给出观点, 争取思考的时间, 再具体说明原因, 最后说明各方面的创新会让人们生活得更好。

A: If I look into my crystal ball, I would say most of the technologies we use today will quickly become outdated (过时的, 废弃的, 淘汰的), I wouldn't like to predict any specific changes, but whatever happens, I'm sure the pace of life (生活节奏) will continue to accelerate (加速). New innovation (创新, 革新) in communications, transportation and medicine would allow everyone to live even longer, more exciting lives.

► Party类话题思路解析

Q: What do you think is important for a good party?

明确回答问题, 指出恰当的人是晚会成功的关键, 然后可以从正反两方面进行论述。最后可以谈一谈自己的看法。

A: For a good party, I think a good mix of people is the most important thing. You need a few social butterflies (交际花, 善于交际的人) to make everyone feel comfortable and more show-offs to provide the entertainment (娱乐). But if too many people try to be the life of the party, it just doesn't work. I don't really like fancy dress parties (化装舞会) or other themes. I prefer an intimate (亲密的) atmosphere where you can really mingle (交往, 交际) with interesting people.

Q: What kinds of parties are most popular in China?

先列举一些比较受欢迎的聚会, 然后挑这几种给出具体的例子。

A: Chinese people love any kind of get-together, particularly family reunions (团圆, 团聚) and anniversaries (周年纪念日). With friends, it's common to have potluck dinners (家常晚饭) and then go out to sing karaoke. Now it's popular to organize parties around games like "Murder". And there are more formal parties to mark important events like housewarming parties (乔迁庆宴), baby showers (孩子出生前举办的送礼会) and engagement parties (订婚

聚会)。

Q: Why do people spend so much money on weddings?

先开门见山，说明原因，然后针对每个原因做出具体阐述。

A: There are three main reasons: tradition, a desire to show off and a desire to mark an important rite of passage (人生大事的通过仪式). Traditionally (传统意义上说), most elaborate weddings are arranged by the parents and are mostly for their benefit. They also like to show off (炫耀, 夸耀) the costly festivities and lavish gifts they can afford (支付得起, 买得起) for their children. But weddings are also a big rite of passage in most young people's lives and they like to make it a memorable occasion.

Q: What's the difference between parties for children and adults?

可从聚会的策划程度方面进行对比，要用具体的事例说明两者的差异。

A: I suppose children's parties are more carefully-planned (精心设计的) by their parents. On their birthdays (生日), they like to go somewhere like McDonald's or KFC and get lots of presents from their friends. Adults' parties are often more impromptu (即兴的, 无准备的) get-togethers. If someone quits the job, it's common to plan a quick party for him.

► Climate类话题思路解析

Q: What are some of the causes of the recent changes in climate?

先用一句话说明温室效应是主要原因，然后具体分析造成温室效应的原因及其具体表现。

A: I think more scientists agree that the recent changes in climate are due to the greenhouse effect (温室效应). Cars and factories emit greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide (二氧化碳) and methane (甲烷). The gases trap heat near the surface of the earth and cause glaciers (冰川) to melt. Increases in the temperature of the atmosphere and the ocean cause extreme weather such as hurricanes (飓风) and cyclones (龙卷风).

Q: What can we do to prevent global warming?

先表明公民和政府都对此负有责任，然后分别阐述公民和政府可以做哪些事情。

A: There are a number of steps that both private citizens (公民) and the government can take to prevent global warming. The government should restrict emissions of greenhouse gases (温室气体) from cars and factories. Meanwhile, private citizens can reduce their carbon footprint (碳足迹) by using public transportation, turning down their air conditioners (空调) and recycling (回收) plastic.

Q: What impact might global warming have on your hometown?

先结合实际情况描述可能产生的后果及其原因，最后可以表达一下自己的观点。

A: I think my hometown is very vulnerable (易受伤害的) to the negative effects of global warming. Because it's almost at sea level (海拔), there's a good chance of flooding (洪水) if the ocean level rises. And higher temperatures mean drought (旱灾) and famine (饥荒) for everyone. On the other hand, maybe it's selfish, but if global warming can make the winters a little less bitter it's not all bad.

Q: Do you think the weather can affect people's personalities?

先给出肯定的回答，然后用具体的例子支持自己的观点，最后可以给出总结，但要显得谦虚，表示自己不太确定。

A: Sure. For example, my hometown is very gloomy and rainy (下雨的，多雨的) and many people can become quite depressed by it. And I've noticed that people who live in hot and arid (干燥的) climates can be a little hot-tempered. Also, people from snowy (下雪的，多雪的) areas tend to be sedate. I don't know if it's because of the food or the weather, but I think the phenomenon (现象) is easy to observe.

► Success类话题思路解析

Q: What is your definition of a successful life?

先用一句话说明自己的观点，然后具体进行阐述和分析。这类开放性的问题可以自由发挥，没有对错。

A: Most importantly, I think to have a successful life you should get a taste of everything that life has to offer, both success (成功) and failure (失败). To do that, you should put your heart into (全身心投入) everything you do. Sometimes the end-result (最终结果) may not be the most important. Instead, the level of commitment (投入) you put into your work will be of the utmost importance (至关重要).

Q: What is your definition of success?

先可以说明对于成功的定义有许多种，然后列举一些比较常见的看法或者意见，最后记得一定要谈一下自己的观点。

A: There are many ways you can look at success. A lot of people would define (定义) success in terms of wealth (财富) or fame (声誉；名望) or power (权力，权势). But even when they have all those things, many people aren't really fulfilled. So, on the contrary, I would define success in terms of intangible (无形的) wealth—things like friendship (友谊), love (爱) and inner peace (内心的平和，内心的宁静).

Q: What are the qualities of a successful person?

可以从“设立目标”以及“用心投入”两个角度来回答这个问题，对于这类开放性题目，在给出观点时最好要强调一下这是个人的观点。

A: To my mind, a successful person is someone who has clearly defined goals and the commitment to achieve (实现) them. There's also a well-known saying: "Failing to plan (计划) is planning to fail." So I think a successful person must have not only a clear vision (抱负) but also a concrete (具体的) plan for achieving it. They have to be both idealistic (理想主义的) and pragmatic (实用主义的).

Q: What do you do when you experience failure in your life?

先简单地说明失败是不可避免的，然后总地说明一下应对的办法，比如分析问题，重新回到工作中，可以用现实生活中的例子来支持自己的观点。

A: I think some failure is an inevitable (不可避免的) part of our lives, so to learn to cope with it is very important. The most important things are to analyze (分析) one's mistakes and to get back on the horse (回到以前所做的事情) as soon as possible. I think our attitude (态度) towards failure is very important. Most people act like one little mistake is the end of the world. But if they give up and don't persist (坚持), they will never be successful at anything.

► Environment Pollution类话题思路解析**Q: Is there any pollution in your city?**

首先，用“是”或“否”回答一般疑问句中的问题，表述观点。其次，分类陈述有哪些污染种类，如水污染、大气污染等，以支持观点。最后，以原因结果的句型结构阐述以上提到的污染导致了哪些问题，如损害健康，破坏生态环境等。

A: Sure. With the development (发展) of modern industry (现代工业), more and more garbage is produced and this is harmful. It pollutes the water (水), soil (土壤) and air (空气). In places around factories, trees and vegetables are often contaminated (被污染) by dirty air and water. When we inhale (吸入) the air, harm is done to our health.

Q: What's the most serious pollution in your city?

先用一句完整的句子简单回答一下问题，同时留出时间思考如何支持观点。然后可以具体说明污染如何严重，用细节进一步详细解释说明。

A: Well, I guess air pollution (空气污染) is the most serious. The sky is not blue any longer. Instead, it's always grey (灰蒙蒙的). Soon we'll have difficulty breathing (呼吸).

Q: What measures have been taken by the government to solve the problem?

考生可以先说明一下政府采取了几种措施，或者直接具体阐述这些措施，比如控制车辆数量、监督工厂、制定条例。

A: The government has put a restriction (限制) on the number of cars. This will lessen the degree (降低……的程度) of air pollution. Besides, different departments of government (政府部门) inspect the factories regularly to make sure they do not pollute the environment.

Q: What measures do you have to solve the pollution problem?

考生可以先说明一下政府应尽的责任，如加强教育。之后，建议考生阐述一下市民应尽的责任，如提高自身意识。

A: I believe it's not just the responsibility (责任) of the government. Every citizen should be educated to be aware of (意识到) the big issue. We should always be aware of environmental protection (环境保护).

► Animal类话题思路解析

Q: Do you think zoos exist primarily to entertain people or to help save animals?

先表明自己的观点，然后陈述事实论据，历史上建立动物园的初衷，动物在人工环境下会丧失其物种特性，因而这样的保护几乎毫无意义。

A: Although zoos claim to educate people and save endangered species (濒临灭绝的物种), I don't really think they have ever really served that purpose. Zoos were originally built to entertain the rich (富人). Animals kept behind bars shouldn't be regarded as being saved from extinction (灭绝), because within any artificial environment (人工环境) they lose their real identity.

Q: Why do you think some people want an exotic animal, such as a mountain lion, a snake, or a monkey, as a pet?

最好给出至少两种原因，应以猜测的语气来陈述，因为这只是个人的猜想，而不一定是别人养此类宠物的原因。

A: Perhaps some just do it out of natural curiosity (好奇心), while others may use an exotic pet to show off (炫耀, 夸耀) their wealth (财富), social status (社会地位), or just to attract attention.

Q: What should people do if they are no longer able to take care of a pet?

从正反两方面来回答较好。正面：宠物交给有经验的朋友或动物护理机构较为安全。反面：宠物如交给不爱护动物或毫无动物饲养经验的人可能不安全。

A: In my opinion, the pet can either be fostered by an experienced (有经验的) friend or an animal care-center (动物护理中心). However, it would be bad for any pet to fall into the hands of (落入……手中) those who are indifferent (漠不关心的) and inexperienced (没有经验的).

Q: Are there any possible solutions to saving endangered species from extinction?

最好能提供至少两种措施。第一, 要有更严厉的法律来制止偷猎和贩卖野生动物。第二, 要更好地保护现有的国家公园。第三, 自然博物馆要免费向儿童提供关于自然界的展览, 以此来增强他们的动物保护意识。

A: Yes. I think we should have tougher laws against poaching(偷猎) and animal trafficking (动物非法交易) and better protection of national parks (国家公园). Besides, natural science museums (自然科学博物馆) should help raise children's awareness of wildlife conservation (野生动物保护) by offering free and informative shows on the natural habitats (自然栖息地) of wild animals.

► Skills类话题思路解析

Q: Can we learn skills from books or do we need a teacher?

先说明人们有不同的学习方式, 然后分别说明两种方式的不同之处, 最后可以在总结的时候给出观点: 大多数人需要老师的指导。

A: I think people have different learning styles. Some people are good at processing information visually (视觉化地) so it's easy for them to learn from books. Other people need to learn by example or remember things better if they hear them. Also, if you're very self-motivated (自我激励的) you might not need a teacher, but many people benefit from (得益于……) a teacher's guidance (指引; 指导).

Q: Is it more important for children to learn practical or academic skills at school?

先说明教育是为了发挥学生最大的潜力, 然后说明家长应该让孩子发挥各种才能。

A: I think, ideally, that education should help children reach their full potential (发挥最大潜力). If a child has a particular aptitude (才能; 资质) for something, regardless of whether it is a practical or academic skill, then their parents and teachers should encourage it. Instead of forcing children to fit the mold (适应模式), we should provide support in learning whatever skills children are interested in.

Q: Why should people who are naturally talented in one area study other things in school?

先表明观点: 任何人都不能只学一样技能, 然后用具体的事实来支持自己的观点。

A: I definitely don't think that people who are naturally gifted in one area should be allowed to focus on it to the exclusion of (把……排除在外) all others. Look at Olympic gymnasts (体操运动员), who sometimes train sixteen hours a day. If they don't master a diverse (多样的) range of skills, one small injury (受伤) could make all their talent and hard work meaningless.

Q: Are certain skills easier to learn for people of different ages?

先给出肯定回答，然后做出具体阐述，可以通过一组对比来说明观点。

A: I think it's true that children's brains are more receptive (乐于接受的). Some child prodigies (神童) can play chess or music even better than adults. But I also think it's easier for adults to dedicate to (奉献于……) a single goal. They'll keep practicing long after children have given up and will have the persistence (坚持) to really master certain skills.

► Advertising类话题思路解析

Q: Do you think advertising reflects cultural differences?

先清楚地表达自己的观点，不同文化背景下的广告的确有所不同。然后分析中国和国外广告的特点，最后做概括。

A: Yes, definitely. I know that in British culture boasting (吹牛；吹嘘) is unacceptable, so many of their advertisements are self-deprecating (自贬的；谦虚的) and humorous (幽默的). American commercials tend to be very brash (傲气的；自以为是的) and energetic. Meanwhile, Chinese ads are distinct for their combination of commercial promotion and concern with the public's welfare.

Q: Do you think there is too much advertising in our lives?

生活中的确处处都是广告，不过好的广告却是凤毛麟角。人们其实需要更多更好的广告。

A: I agree with most people that there is too much irresponsible (不负责任的) and deceptive (欺骗性的) advertising in our lives. But I think we could actually use more advertising of the type that could really help and enlighten (启发) us. I think more accountability (负责) should be demanded from advertisers to ensure that their products measure up.

Q: Do you find advertising informative or do you think it promotes unnecessary products and services?

先分析站在消费者和商家的不同角度来审视对待广告的态度和目的，然后尝试调和两种不同的观点。

A: I think everyone can agree that spam and false advertising (虚假广告) are both really irritating. But I think many people do look at advertising as a helpful guide to making smart purchases (购买). I guess it depends on how blatant (公然的; 露骨的) the advertising is. In any case, customers should always take their claims with a grain of salt (不轻信他人的话).

Q: How could advertisements be improved in the future?

先分析广告的基本用途, 然后谈及它的社会影响, 最后总结自己的见解。

A: The fundamental (最根本的) function of ads is to disseminate (传播) commercial and business information. But I think now too many advertisers are just looking for a quick buck (迅速获得的钱财). Advertising should be more public-oriented (出于公共目的的). It should help to promote good value and healthy life styles.

► Aging类话题思路解析

Q: Do you think young people are the happiest?

先陈述观点, 然后分析各年龄段的特点, 最后做出总结。

A: I don't quite agree. It's kind of arbitrary (武断) to pick one group, because I think personality has a lot more to do with happiness than age. But, as a general rule, I'd say young people have optimism about their futures but also a lot of angst (焦虑不安; 烦躁). Meanwhile, senior citizens (老年人) can rest and pursue their interests but they have to deal with the ravages of old age (老年带来的后果).

Q: How will technology affect aging in the future?

客观地、中立地看待此问题。分析科学技术的发展能给人类带来的便利, 不过也要充分意识到改变自然规律的后果。

A: Obviously, scientific and technological breakthroughs (突破) will impact our life span (寿命) tremendously. I read that children born today might live to be 120 or 130. Maybe one day our adolescence (青春期) could last into our thirties or forties. On the other hand, it could mean that a small number of working adults have to shoulder the burden (负担) of supporting four or five generations instead of two or three.

Q: Is there any special happy event in your childhood that you remember most?

列举一件童年时期让自己快乐的事情。注意过去时态的运用。

A: I always loved Children's Day when I was very young. My parents would take me somewhere as a special treat (意外的乐事; 幸事). We didn't get to spend very much quality time (宝贵时光; 尤指下班后与孩子一起度过的宝贵时光) together, so I really cherish (珍惜; 珍视) the memory of those outings.

Q: Have attitudes towards the elderly changed in the past twenty years in China?

先要说明老年人的贡献，然后分析他们此时的需要，最后给出自己的见解，我们能为他们做什么。

A: I would say very little has changed. For example, in the past, it was unthinkable to send your parents to a retirement home (养老院; 敬老院). And now there's still a lot of peer pressure (同辈间的压力; 同龄人的压力) to take care of elderly relatives yourself. Instead of seeing older people as a responsibility and a burden as some people do in the West, in China, seniors are venerated (受尊敬; 受敬重) and welcomed into the homes of their children.

► Arts类话题思路解析

Q: What kinds of crafts are traditional in China?

先说明中国传统工艺的多样性，然后列举其中一部分。

A: Chinese culture is very diverse so there are many, many kinds of traditional crafts practiced by different ethnic groups (少数民族). Some of the most famous ones include jade sculpture, paper cutting (剪纸), embroidery (刺绣) and batik (蜡染).

Q: Should children be taught arts and crafts in school?

先给出自己的观点，然后从正反两方面阐述，分别说明原因，适当用一些例子来支持自己的观点。

A: I think it's a good idea in moderation. Arts and crafts are an important part of our cultural heritage / legacy (文化遗产) and can help keep creative children interested in school. But, on the other hand, there aren't many jobs available in seal-carving (刻章) or knot-making (编中国结) so kids need time to study other subjects too.

Q: Should the government provide funding for the arts?

可以从别人的观点入手，说明已经存在的一些看法并作出分析。记得最后一一定要说明自己的态度。

A: Some people say the arts are a business too, so artists should only make money if they are popular and can sell their pieces. But many avant-garde (先锋的; 标新立异的) artists can't sell their works because they're too far ahead of their time. So I think it's reasonable (合理的) for the government to support artists as long as it doesn't ask them to sell out (出卖原则; 放弃信仰).

Q: How will the arts change in the future?

对于这类设想、展望类的问题，建议考生不要给出太绝对的看法。比较好的办法是

从两三个方面进行阐述。

A: I see the future of the arts going in two directions at once. On the one hand, technology will make it cheap and easy for everyone to make and own art, so I think pop arts (流行艺术) will flourish (繁荣; 活跃). At the same time, I think high-quality hand-crafted (手工制作的) items will be more and more in demand.

► Books and Stories类话题思路解析

Q: What makes a good story?

先表明自己的态度，然后简要说明原因。

A: First of all, I think it's important that the characters be realistic (现实的; 实际的). The pace of the story and the plot depend on the genre (类型; 体裁), but I like stories that are a little suspenseful (悬疑的; 紧张的) and where everyone gets their just desserts (得到应得的结果) at the end.

Q: What type of books do people like in China?

对于这一类问题，不仅要列举受欢迎的书籍类型，还要说明原因。

A: It's hard to say. Self-improvement is very important to a lot of Chinese people so educational and business books are always hot-sellers (畅销书). More and more people are interested in self-help books (自我提升类书籍) and autobiographies (自传), but only a few people have free time to read novels or poetry (诗歌).

Q: What are the differences between reading books in print and on the computer?

通过对比说明两者的特点。

A: Well, computers can store (储存) millions of books and it's easy to download whatever you want. But reading on the computer too much can lead to eyestrain (视疲劳). And many people like to curl up (蜷缩) in bed with a good book or read on the beach. So far, even the smallest laptops don't give you the same feeling.

Q: Do you think books or television programs are more educational?

先表明自己的观点，然后进一步说明原因。

A: Comparatively speaking (比较而言; 相对而言), I think books are a more dependable source of knowledge. Although there are many documentaries (纪录片) on TV, their scope (范围) is limited. There are more topics that can't really be illustrated in TV programs, such as psychology or philosophy. So I think books can offer more systematic (系统化的) and detailed knowledge in some areas.

► Cultures类话题思路解析

Q: Do you think it's important to learn about other cultures?

先用一句话给出肯定的回答，然后给出具体原因。主要从拓宽思维、减少冲突角度进行分析。

A: Yes. Exposure (暴露; 显露) to different cultures can make us more open-minded to diverse social values (社会价值) and philosophies (哲学). We'll no longer judge others based on our own limited frame of reference (参照依据; 参照标准). This helps to reduce conflict and misunderstanding, which drives a wedge between (使……不和) people.

Q: Do you think it's easier to learn about other cultures today than it was before?

同样地，先简单地给出回答。然后阐述原因，比如全球化以及网络的普及。

A: Absolutely. Globalization (全球化) and the popularity of the Internet have greatly facilitated (使容易; 有助于) learning about other cultures. Instead of being cut off from the rest of the world, many people now have the resources (资源) to travel overseas and learn about foreign cultures first hand (第一手地).

Q: What do you think is the best way to learn about another culture?

可以先说明融入一个新的环境是最好的学习方法。同时可以提供其他思路，比如学习语言。

A: Undoubtedly, the best way to learn about another culture is to immerse yourself in (使自己沉浸于……) the new place and live with the natives. Only in this way can you get authentic (正宗的; 原汁原味的) knowledge about the culture. But for those who can't afford to completely uproot (使……迁移到别处居住) themselves, learning the language is a good first step.

Q: Do you think that learning foreign languages can help us understand foreign cultures?

先给出肯定回答，然后从语言学习和文化学习的相似性角度进行分析。最后给出具体的例子来说明自己的观点。

A: Definitely. The process of language acquisition (语言学习; 语言习得) definitely goes hand in hand with (与……齐头并进) cultural understanding. For example, certain attitudes and patterns of thought (思维方式) can be expressed in one language but not in another. They can teach us a lot about the cultural assumptions of the people who speak the language.

► Business类话题思路解析

Q: Compare running a small business to being an employee in a large company.

需要从正反两方面进行比较。正面可以说明自己创业的自由性，反面可以说明自己创业的压力。

A: One advantage of being your own boss is that you can make your own hours and don't have to be accountable (负有责任的) to anyone. You're not just a cog in the wheel (无足轻重的人物) You can run the show. On the other hand, it must be very stressful to be self-employed and just a step or two away from bankruptcy (破产).

Q: How can small businesses benefit the people in their community?

可以与大型商店对比，来突出小商店的特征与优势。用具体的例子来支持自己的观点。

A: Small businesses, unlike large corporations, have to cater to (迎合; 投合) the local community. So, in general, they tend to pay better wages and cause less pollution. They're also more responsive to the needs of the local market (当地市场). For example, they might be more likely to let regulars (常客) buy things on credit (赊账).

Q: What challenges and difficulties do people face when they try to open a small business?

根据创业流程来分析会遇到哪些困难，比如定位、建立顾客忠实度等等。一般列举三个观点，挑选其中一个进行详细阐述。

A: One of the main challenges for those who run small businesses would be carving out a niche for themselves (找到适合自己的位置). There's so much competition, especially in China, that it's difficult to stand out from the crowd. Once they've defined what makes them special, they still need to build customer loyalty (顾客忠实度). And keeping prices low, while assuring quality merchandise (品质商品; 高质量的商品) is tricky but critical.

Q: How do you think small businesses will change in the future?

先说明小商店会面临的挑战，也就是需要进行改变的原因。然后给出一两条解决方案，也就是说具体如何进行改变。

A: I think small businesses in China will face a lot of pressure as one-stop shopping (一站式购物) in big-box stores like Carrefour becomes more popular. Small businesses will really have to emphasize (强调; 重视) excellent service and personal touch (人情味) if they want to compete with the convenience and lower prices of large retail chains (零售连锁店).

► Exercise类话题思路解析

Q: What are the advantages of regular exercise?

先可以表明定期运动对健康的重要性。然后可以简单地举例说明运动会身体的哪些方面产生积极影响。最后可以进一步说明定期运动对疾病具有积极的预防作用。

A: Exercise can invigorate (使……健康; 使……精力充沛) you and make you look and feel better. Exercise on a regular basis (定期地) can be beneficial in many ways. First, there are the obvious physical advantages such as strength, endurance (耐力) and flexibility. There are also the not-so-obvious physical advantages such as the prevention of diseases and some kinds of cancer, and the reduction of hypertension (高血压).

Q: How important do you think it is to keep fit?

可以通过列举现代生活中人们的种种不良生活习惯, 从而达到说明运动在人们生活中的重要性, 最后总结健康对人们生活的意义。

A: In today's society, it is especially important to keep fit because more people are eating junk food and falling prey to (被……折磨) addictive (容易上瘾的; 令人上瘾的) computer games instead of joining outdoor activities and eating a balanced diet (营养均衡的饮食). I think health is our most valuable possession and should be carefully guarded.

Q: What kinds of exercise do you think are the best for your health?

先表达对运动的看法。接着推荐自己认为对健康最有好处的运动方式, 并简单说明原因。最后强调运动贵在坚持。

A: Swimming and jogging (慢跑) would be excellent choices. Either of them would be a key part of an effective exercise regimen (运动养生法). When jogging or swimming, it is possible to get in a zone (进入忘我境界) and completely forget that you are exercising at all. But the most important thing is to go at a speed you can sustain (保持; 维持) and to do it on a daily basis.

Q: What do you think our hobbies and interests tell other people about our personality?

先说明兴趣爱好和个性存在一定的联系, 然后通过2~3个例子论述自己的观点, 注意对比的使用。

A: I think you can tell a lot about someone's personality from the sports and hobbies they enjoy. A reserved (保守的) person will probably enjoy individual sports (个人运动) like yoga or archery (射箭), while a more outgoing person is more likely to enjoy team sports (团队运动) or sports which require a partner. Basketball or table tennis come to mind.

► Exercise类话题思路解析

Q: Are there any differences between the ways men and women shop?

先说明男人和女人有种植不同的看法。接着分别说明不同之处。

A: When it comes to shopping, women and men have very different approaches. Men tend to shop only for a predefined (预定的; 预设的) purpose. It's very straight-forward. Just

get the item and get out. But women like to browse (浏览商品) without a clear objective. They enjoy window shopping (浏览商店橱窗却不打算购物), comparison shopping (比较式购物) and bargaining more than men do.

Q: Does advertising influence your shopping habits?

首先说明广告在人们生活中扮演的角色。其次说明广告在人们生活中产生的积极影响。最后阐述自己对广告的看法。

A: I think advertising can have a very strong subliminal (潜意识的; 下意识的) influence. I like to think that I choose clothes according to my personal taste. But if I look back at old pictures, I can see that I chose items that were in vogue (时尚的; 流行的) whether I realized it or not. I guess companies wouldn't spend all that money on advertising if they didn't think they could control what was trendy (时髦的; 新潮的).

Q: Are brand name clothes important to you?

先表明自己对名牌的看法。接着说明自己不追求名牌的原因。最后表明自己对买衣服的态度。

A: A lot of people are obsessed with brand names but I really couldn't care less about them. I think brand names are just an excuse to rip people off (敲竹杠). I do look for durability (耐穿性) and comfort, but it doesn't matter to me if the clothes come from a second-hand shop (二手商店), mall (购物中心; 商场) or boutique.

Q: What kinds of clothes do you like to wear?

先表明自己喜欢何种风格的衣服, 然后分别举例说明自己在不同场合会选择何种不同风格的服装。

A: It depends on the situation. On the weekends, I wear street clothes (街头服饰) or whatever is comfortable. At work I will follow the dress code (某种特定场合的衣着标准). When I go to parties, I'll dress up (装扮; 打扮) a bit to try to make an impression (留下好印象).

► Gardens and Parks类话题思路解析

Q: What are important qualities for a garden or park?

先阐述决定公园好坏的重要因素, 再适当地解释自己的理由。

A: I go to parks mainly for relaxation so, in my opinion, a good park should offer visitors a pleasant stress-free environment. I like parks that feel spacious (宽敞的; 宽阔的), even when they are quite small, and offer a lot of nooks (角落; 隐蔽处) with benches (户外的长凳) where you can sit and enjoy the view.

Q: How can parks or gardens attract more visitors?

列举一些具体的改善服务，吸引更多游客的方案。可以通过举例来说明自己的观点。

A: If public parks allow free admission (免费入场) and hold some exhibitions or concerts (音乐会) regularly, I suppose more people will visit them. For example, when my local park had an orchid (兰花) show a few months ago, visitors came from all over the city to participate in it.

Q: What are some of the influences of parks on your life?

用分类法来回答，列举不同类型的公园对人的影响。

A: Where to start... well, different kinds of parks have different influences. Traditional parks with picturesque (风景如画的) scenery encourage me to stop and smell the roses. Theme parks with exciting rides get my blood pumping (使我热血沸腾). Those gardens built by ancient Chinese artisans (工匠; 手艺人) teach me the rewards of patience and painstaking (费尽心思的) attention to detail.

► **Leaders and heroes**类话题思路解析

Q: What are the qualities of a good leader or hero?

首先解释 “hero” 的定义。然后提出自己的观点：每个人都可以成为英雄。之后具体阐述观点。

A: The word “hero” suggests the typical “white knight (白衣骑士; 救星)” qualities like: generosity (慷慨; 宽容), selflessness, bravery and that sort of thing. Some people expect heroes to be flawless (无缺点的; 无瑕的). But I think we all can be heroes. It’s the spirit of helping others and being civic-minded (有公民意识的) makes someone a hero. Following this spirit, we can find heroes everywhere.

Q: How do people become heroes?

分析人们想成名的各种原因，总结真正的英雄是不会为了成名本身而去努力或做出牺牲。做好点点滴滴才最重要。

A: There’s a famous saying: “Some people are born great, some achieve greatness and some have greatness thrust upon (强迫……接受不想要的东西) them.” I think it’s true that natural ability, hard work and necessity (必要; 需要) can all lead to greatness. For other people, it might be an ego trip (自我表现; 自我满足的行为), greed (贪婪) or a sense of competition (竞争). But I think real heroes don’t actually care if they are a hero or not. They just want to help society as much as they can.

Q: What are some of the responsibilities of a leader?

列举两到三个领导者必须具备的品质，比如关注团队、能解决争端、能预料意外事件等等。

A: First, I think a leader is responsible for the wellbeing (健康; 幸福) of their team. They need to keep everyone motivated and on-task (各司其职的). They should settle disputes (解决争端; 平息争端) between members of the team so that everyone will keep cooperating. And they should anticipate contingencies (预料意外事件) so they can avoid them.

Q: Do you think sports and entertainment stars are heroes?

分析明星们带给社会和公众的正负面影响，很多明星在生活上、言行上肆无忌惮，事实上是造成了非常负面的影响，所以明星并不代表英雄。

A: I don't think they're the same at all. Just because someone is talented in one area, it doesn't mean we should put them on a pedestal (把他们当作偶像崇拜). And some stars really don't live up to their reputations (名副其实). Endless scandals, drugs, shady (不正当的; 可疑的) business deals and affairs (桃色事件) are all typical behaviors for many superstars.

► Holiday and Tourism类话题思路解析

Q: What are some of the differences between living at home and staying in a hotel?

先说明宾馆可以提供哪些家中没有的服务或者设施。同时指出宾馆的缺点：任何东西都不是属于自己的。最后说明住家的好处。

A: Hotels have many amenities (便利设施; 娱乐场所) such as maid service (女佣服务), room service (客房服务), a fitness center (健身中心) and even a business center with internet access. It's more relaxing but nothing really belongs to (属于) you. When you live at home, you can arrange things exactly the way you like them.

Q: How important is tourism in your hometown?

先说明一下自己家乡的情况，有哪些景点。如果没有什么特别景点，也可以介绍一下周边。最后说明旅游业的重要影响，比如促进经济发展。

A: I come from a mid-sized city. It doesn't have many historic (历史性的) or cultural sights but it's a good jumping-off point (起点; 出发点) for many scenic areas in the mountains nearby. Even though we don't get a lot of visitors, I still think tourism, as a green industry (绿色产业), is very important for our economy.

Q: Does tourism have any negative effects?

在给出肯定回答的同时，要注意说明前提是游客过多。然后列举两三个可能产生的负面影响。

A: If the number of visitors isn't carefully managed, then yes, tourism can have some negative effects. Over-crowding (过度拥挤) makes it hard for everyone to enjoy the sites and encourages littering. Too many souvenir shops (纪念品商店) can really spoil the atmosphere (破坏气氛; 破坏氛围). And in some places, like nature reserves (自然保护区), too many tourists can scare away the animals.

Q: How do you think holidays will change in the future?

列举两三个将来可能出现的度假或者旅游方式, 比如生态旅游, 太空旅游。注意要运用将来时。

A: I think as more and more natural scenery disappears, eco-tourism (生态旅游) will become very popular. Also, many families will like to relax at theme-parks (主题公园) or in large resorts like the ones in Hainan. And perhaps some intrepid (无畏的; 勇敢的) travellers will go to the moon or some underwater cities on their holidays.

► Communication类话题思路解析

Q: What kind of mail do you usually get?

可以先指出会收到很多垃圾邮件和账单。之后可以说明也会收到一些亲友的信件。

A: Sometimes I think the only mail I get is junk mail (垃圾邮件) and bills (账单). I get a lot of flyers from supermarkets and cards from travel agencies (旅行社). Every once in a while, I get a nice postcard from a friend or a care package (为远离家庭的人寄送的信件) from my parents but usually my mail is pretty boring.

Q: Are there any differences between how older and younger people choose to communicate?

可以通过具体的事例对比来说明两者的区别。别忘了最后要给出结论。

A: Maybe. My grandmother is a great letter writer. She sends me a letter every two or three months but the letters are usually long and substantial (内容充实的). I'm afraid I'm not a very good correspondent (通信者) though. I just dash off (匆忙写; 匆忙完成) a quick e-mail every now and then. So I think older people prefer longer, slow, thoughtful methods of communication and young people like something faster and more spontaneous (自发的; 自然产生的).

Q: Do you think e-mail will ever replace letter writing?

先表明自己的观点: 电子邮件已经取代了传统信件。然后具体阐述。最后可以提一下有时候书面形式还是比较重要的。

A: In my opinion, it has already replaced letter writing in many contexts (环境; 场合).

Now the only time I see a letter instead of an e-mail is for some very official notices (官方通知) or documents. I guess in some situations it will always be important to have a hard copy (电脑资料的打印稿) on company letterhead (信笺抬头) but usually an e-mail is sufficient.

Q: What are the advantages and disadvantages of always being in contact with other people?

分别说明手机的利弊并给出理由。然后要给出自己的结论: 是利大于弊还是弊大于利。

A: Some people don't like mobile phones because they like having some time alone away from the pressure of life (生活压力). But I think even if you have a mobile phone it's easy to screen your calls (有选择地接听你的电话). Carrying a mobile phone makes life much safer and more convenient. So I think the advantages far outweigh (比……更重要) the disadvantages.



第3节 雅思口语考试Part 3和雅思写作通用素材库

雅思口语考试的Part 3换个说法其实是雅思写作的浓缩版或者说是写作的口语表达版。因为很多雅思口语考试Part 3的问题和雅思写作的Task 2的题目极为相似，甚至有些口语题目的深度超过了写作题目，这就要求考生有比较强的逻辑思维和很快的现场反应。对于考官的各种问题，考生一定要有自己的素材库，在考场中可以灵活运用以应对考官的各种问题。在本节中，我们就雅思口语考官在考场中可能问到的Part 3难点问题逐一给出素材库，考生在准备这些问题和素材的时候要模仿雅思写作Task 2的准备方法，既要准备回答方式和思路，又要准备语言方面的内容。和写作Task 2一样，口语Part 3的素材库准备的时候也分为教育、科技、文化和社会四个大类别。

► 首先大家来关注雅思口语考试Part 3教育类素材库：

How do you summarize the major characteristics of Chinese educational system?

Size. The Chinese educational system is the biggest educational system in the world. In Beijing alone there are 7,000 schools and about 60 “regular” colleges and universities. In some other countries, the total number is about 40.

Comprehensive. The Chinese educational system is a comprehensive and complete educational system, comprising: preschool education; primary; secondary; university; and, postgraduate education. Schooling starts at the age of six and education is compulsory for the next nine years. English is compulsory in secondary schools and some primary schools offer English from 1st Grade. The academic degree system (e.g., BA, MA, PhD) is very recent in China, dating from 1980.

Imbalanced. The Chinese educational system is not a balanced educational system. While there are some schools in the cities, the vast majority of schools are in the countryside. The schools in these areas are comparatively poorly funded, poorly staffed and poorly equipped.

Competitive. The Chinese educational system is a highly competitive educational system. Because of the huge population waiting to be educated, and the limited space in colleges and universities, entrance to higher educational institutions must be very competitive. A Nationwide Unified College Entrance Examination system has been adopted. As a result, almost all study in primary and secondary schools is focused on that college examination.

Centralized. The Chinese educational system is a centralized educational system. The legislation of education rests not locally or provincially but centrally, with the Ministry. The central directives are specific and explicit: what kind of textbooks schools have to use, how big the sports ground has to be, and so on.

What do you think of Distance Education?

Distance Education provides all the benefits of study, learning, professional development and university qualifications without having to leave home or leaving work to complete a degree. In fact if your work is related to your area of study you can often combine your industrial experience with some of the requirements of the study program.

Distance education has advantages and disadvantages and whether one outweighs the other depends quite often on your personal abilities. The Faculty of Rural Management, now has been delivering courses by distance education for over twenty years and has considerable experience in helping students overcome the problems that are common to studying from home.

We realize that motivation, time management, isolation and communication are issues facing students studying from home. Our experience also indicates that when these issues are handled properly our distance education students thrive on their studies.

Communication is probably the key issue—communication between students and academics certainly helps overcome isolation and keeps you motivated. Time management is a more personal issue, however the University is fully aware of the commitments students may have to work and family and tries to be flexible to accommodate each student's commitments.

What is your opinion on studying abroad?

Studying abroad is a good experience for college students. You can learn something different from what you can learn at your college in your country. Universities abroad offer many courses, which your university at home does not. Even if they offer similar courses, the content, concepts, and views covered and the assumptions and values they are based on may be different. Even if they are the same, studying them in a foreign language is different and worthwhile for language practice.

Advantages:

If you study abroad, you will study using a foreign language, which will be quite different from studying in your native language. You will study with friends from that country, and in many cases, you will study with friends from other countries as well, since many large universities abroad have many foreign students. Studying itself may be different. You may be required to read a lot; you will probably be expected to participate in discussions or / and make presentations in class; you may learn through doing something rather than just by reading and memorizing; you may need to write reports or do projects. In other words, you can expect something different in your learning experience, which you might find meaningful.

Living abroad itself can be a great experience for you. You will be on your own, and you need to take care of yourself. Your life will be quite different from your life in your native country, which will be a quite challenging and interesting experience. You may live

with a family or with friends in a dorm or an apartment. You will have many chances to get acquainted with local people.

You will also have opportunities to take part in many events on and off campus, where you will meet people and have new experiences with them. Universities have such academic and cultural events as lectures, movies, plays, concerts, and sports events. These experiences will help you understand the people and their culture better. You may find answers for your questions about them. It is much easier to understand their culture through experiences than just through books, movies, etc. Of course, you will have many, many opportunities to use the local language to communicate with people there, and your communication will be improved through living there.

Understanding a foreign language and culture helps you to understand your native language and culture better. You have thought many things natural, but you will learn that people in other countries do things differently—and they think that their ways of doing things are natural. You will understand characteristics of your native language and culture better. You may understand how your people are different from other people. If you pay more attention, you will understand people are the same even if they have different languages and cultures, but at the surface, there are some differences, which could be barriers for understanding and communication.

Disadvantages:

Studying abroad is not necessarily an easy, pleasant, and happy experience for everyone. You are far away from your family for a long time, and you may not see them for a year or even longer. You cannot expect their help. You may not find people who understand you or your culture, and you may not feel comfortable. Particularly, when you have problems, you may feel very lonely and unhappy. You may miss your favorite food. You may need to eat the only food local people are eating, which you may find hard to adjust to. You may have some difficulty expressing yourself in the local language. Studying in a foreign language might be very difficult. You will experience culture shock while you are living in a foreign country. However, these hardships make you better educated and trained. You will find much joy and satisfaction in overcoming these hardships.

How has the physical environment changed in China in recent years for early childhood education?

A kindergarten often has several classroom buildings surrounding an enclosed courtyard. This courtyard serves as the playground and is used extensively between classroom lessons. The playground contains equipment for large motor activities, including slides, merry-go-rounds, climbers and swings. Bright colors and dragon or elephant shapes provide added appeal. The ground cover is usually a sturdy brick or concrete, with no sand, grass or air to soften falls. A few trees, bushes and flowers do, however, beautify the environment. Children are generally free to choose their own activities, with little teacher-directed activities or even supervision.

Each group of children has its own large classroom, plus a separate room with beds for afternoon naps. Several groups of children generally share toilet facilities and washrooms. Each group in the model school has a self-contained space, complete with classroom, sleeping room, toilet and washroom. The younger children even have their own playground.

The space in the classrooms is not organized into special interest areas and equipment is scarce or not easily accessible to children. In China, small tables and chairs for each child occupy much of the room. A large open space may be set aside at one end for group activities, such as dancing.

The better-equipped centers may possess one shelf of toys and books available for children's use during their free time. Elaborate, artistic, teacher-made decorations and children's works brighten up otherwise drab rooms. Sometimes, artistically talented teachers paint large murals of children and animals in the hallways or place a large, colorful clown on the wall as part of a weather wheel. Children's works vary greatly and include such items as mobiles, math papers, crayon drawings and paper foldings.

How do Chinese families invest in the education of children?

In recent years, many Chinese families are spending more and more on education of their children. Many factors contribute to the rapidly increased family spending on education, and "making sure my kid gets the best possible start" is one of them, as witnessed by the high spending on pre-school education. Many parents try to send their children to the best kindergarten regardless of higher tuition fees.

Choosing better middle school for their children also takes money. According to China's education policy, children must attend the middle school within the district where they live. However, many parents want to send their kids to better-known or better-equipped schools in other districts, and thus their children's attending those schools entails a lot of money.

In recent years, going abroad to study has become a trend among young Chinese. Chinese parents believe there are several advantages for their children's going abroad to study—getting direct exposure to foreign languages and culture may be the most important one. As a result, many Chinese families send their children to study in Britain, the United States, Australia and New Zealand to study at extremely high cost. Quite a number of the parents are on debt because of the heavy expenditure.

With only one child to shoulder their hopes and dreams, parents are making every effort to shoulder any financial burden to endure their children's future through a good education. According to these parents, given the fierce competition behind the national college entrance exam, as long as there are prestigious schools and normal schools, there can be no real equal education opportunity for students. In the eyes of both parents and their children, the prestigious schools without question will deliver a quality education in a good study

environment with qualified teachers. More importantly, the best schools are regarded as places that will guarantee a bright future.

What are your opinions on the kids' games these days?

I think games are very important to children. Firstly, a good game can teach children to study in an interesting and funny way, which is more acceptable to kids. Secondly, playing games can train children's ability of creation and cooperation. Thirdly, games can give the happiness to people's childhoods. We will never forget those funny memories.

However, on the other hand, some side effects of games should also be taken into consideration. For example, the electronic games in computers or networks are so attractive that have ruined much schoolwork of indulged children. Nowadays, cyber games have been very popular among kids, parents should try to prevent their kids playing too much.

How can people judge true friends?

A true friend is someone who is always there. It's a person who will drop all their plans just because the other doesn't want to go. It's the kind of best friend who will always tell you the truth even when you don't want to hear it sometimes. True friends should last forever and never fade. They should do their duties as true friends and be there every moment that they can. A true friend is a person who you tell your darkest secrets to, you know, the ones you would never tell a family member. It's a person who can keep you up for hours talking about the past and laughing as you do too. It's the kind of friend who has always been there and will never leave your side. It's the kind of friend who will always be there to stand up for you, even when the people she or he is standing up to happen to be her other friends. A true friend is the kind of friend who will join something just because so you won't be alone.

What makes a good neighbor?

Being a good neighbor means being considerate of others.

You must allow your neighbor access to your property if he needs such access for construction, repairs or maintenance work on his property. However, he must first notify you either orally or in writing. He must also repair any damage caused by this work and restore your property to its original condition.

Sometimes, a person acting in good faith may erect a structure on a piece of land that belongs to his neighbor. If you are in this position, the neighbor may ask you to either purchase the piece of land or pay compensation for the temporary loss of the use of the land for the period during which the structure remains standing.

No one may subject his neighbors to abusive noise. Many municipalities have set a limit on the number of decibels allowed and impose fines for violations. For instance, if the constant, annoying drone of your ventilation system or heat pump prevents your neighbors

from sleeping, you will have to correct the situation. Likewise, if your dog barks loudly or howls at night, you may be forced to rectify its behavior, or to dispose of it.

What is the difference in requirements for making friends between in your childhood and now?

Children may regard one as his or her friend if he or she can simply play with them and whoever treats them well. For adults, things are more complex. Adults emphasize the mutual support and understanding. They can forgive and accept friends' errors and help them out. However, children pay less attention to the status and backgrounds of their friends while adults may consider more about the material values, such as whether the friend is helpful to their life or their career. The difference is there because of the difference in viewing the world between children and adults.

► 雅思口语考试Part 3科技类素材库:

Do you think patent is important in the modern society?

It is natural to ask why the Government makes this offer of protection under the patent law. The answer is in the Constitution itself, which provides that Congress may secure this right to inventors in order to promote the progress of the useful arts. The public benefits from this system for three reasons:

First, the offer of patent protection encourages the inventor to make the invention;

Second, if the inventor succeeds with the help of the patent in developing and marketing the invention, the public is given the opportunity to use it;

Third, since the inventor must describe the invention in the patent, and copies of the patent may be purchased by the public, then the knowledge of the invention is made available to everyone. If it were not for the patent law, many inventors would be unable to develop their inventions and would abandon their ideas instead of going forward with them, and many others would keep them secret as long as they could, instead of publishing them in patents which stimulate others to make still further inventions.

What inventions do you think are greatest in Chinese history?

Papermaking. Chinese legend tells that the new invention of paper was presented to the Emperor in the year? Archeological evidence, however, shows that paper was in use two hundred years before then. Either way, the Chinese were significantly ahead of the rest of the world. The craft, of papermaking relied upon an abundance of bamboo fiber to produce a fine quality paper. In China, the papermaker uses only the traditional materials and methods to produce fine art paper.

Printing. The Chinese invention of moveable type, credited to the year 1045 AD, did not significantly impact Chinese society. Three hundred years later in Europe, Gutenberg's development of moveable type revolutionized the Western world. The Chinese language uses 3,000 to 5,000 characters in an average newspaper. The English language, in comparison, uses 26 characters in an average newspaper. Clearly, manipulating 5,000 characters on a printing press took much longer than moving 26. Still, the invention of moveable type furthered Chinese technology and its role in the advancement of human civilization.

Gunpowder. Imagine their enemy's surprise when the Chinese first demonstrated their newest invention in the eighth century AD. Chinese scientists discovered that an explosive mixture could be produced by combining sulfur, charcoal, and saltpeter (potassium nitrate). The military applications were clear. New weapons were rapidly developed, including rockets and others that were launched from a bamboo tube. Once again, the raw materials at hand, like bamboo, contributed ideas for new technologies.

Compass. By the third century AD, Chinese scientists had studied and learned much about magnetism in nature. For example, they knew that iron ore, called magnetite, tended to align itself in a North / South position. Scientists learned to "make magnets" by heating pieces of ore to red hot temperatures and then cooling the pieces in a North / South position. The magnet was then placed on a piece of reed and floated in a bowl of water marked with directional bearings. These first navigational compasses were widely used on Chinese ships by the eleventh century AD.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of e-mail?

Advantages:

E-mail is fairly fast. Using e-mail, the delivery of a message can take a few seconds to a day or so, which depends on the network transmission and the delay in the recipient's reading.

E-mail is asynchronous communication, which means communication that does not occur at the same time. Thus one sends a message, which can be read by the recipient at any time, which is convenient for him or her. This is a very useful factor for communicating between long distances and different world time zones.

Another important advantage in use of e-mail is its rather cheap service. Thus e-mail allows one to have a large number of correspondents worldwide (one can send an e-mail to New Zealand being himself / herself situated somewhere in Europe for example), with cost of a single local call.

When one uses online e-mail services, then it is absolutely free of charge.

Disadvantages:

E-mail has quite low level of security and privacy. The majority of the e-mails are

delivered to the correct addressee. However, sometimes, messages may be delivered to individuals other than the sender or recipient. This could occur because of a simple mistake: the address of the recipient was typed incorrectly (one wrong letter makes an error), or there has been a transmission error etc.

Another thing that can be considered as a disadvantage is that in many cases the storage limit of the e-mail inbox is not that big. This mainly goes for online free services.

Also it is important to mention the case of e-mail forgery. This can occur when for instance: one can send an e-mail as someone else, and it is not a very hard trick to do (this among other ways can be done by simply changing the e-mail address of the sender). That means that when receiver gets the e-mail he / she thinks it was sent from a certain person / address, when in reality it is being sent by a different person, perhaps a complete stranger.

► 雅思口语考试Part 3文化类素材库:

How does tourism benefit a country?

Tourism generates foreign exchange. The substantial foreign currency earns helps to save on imports thus making valuable contributions to domestic tourism requirements.

Tourism generates local employment both directly in the tourism sector and in the various support and resource management sectors.

Tourism stimulates profitable domestic industries in hotels, restaurants, transport systems, souvenirs and handicrafts, and guides.

Tourism diversifies the local economy, particularly in rural areas where cultural employment may be sporadic or insufficient. The benefits of tourism are diffused throughout the economy, many with multiplier effects, so that it is difficult to evaluate accurately their contribution.

Tourism stimulates the rural economy by creating demand for agricultural produce and injecting capita.

Tourism stimulates improvements to local transportation and communications infrastructures, which brings benefits to local people.

Tourism improves intercultural understanding and global communication.

Tourism promotes development of recreational facilities which may be used by local communities as well as domestic and foreign visitors.

Tourism prompts conservation by convincing government officials and the general public of the importance of natural areas.

If properly planned and managed, tourism is both a non-polluting and renewable industry. This is what ecotourism is all about.

What are the differences between Chinese music and Western music?

Traditional Chinese music was based highly upon the philosophy of Confucius. His philosophy said “that sound influences the harmony of the universe...[Confucius] conceived of music in the highest sense as a means of calming the passions and of dispelling unrest and lust, rather than as a form of amusement. The ancient Chinese belief is that music is meant not to amuse but to purify one’s thoughts.” The scale of notes was limited to a 5-note pentatonic scale as opposed to the 7-note scale employed by Western music. The notes were put together so intricately and in such a way that each “segment” of a piece seemed to compliment the next.

Another key difference between traditional Chinese music and Western music is that traditional Chinese music often lacks the harmony of multiple pitches playing at the same time. Many Westerners have thought of the music as “unscientific” or “undeveloped” because it did not have, say, harmony. It is this overall simplicity of the music that defines the culture of its people. The people who reject traditional Chinese music on this basis are guilty of intellectual and social snobbery. Intellectual snobbery comes in the form of not realizing that traditional Chinese music has been in existence for thousands of years, much longer than any form of Western music. Social snobbery includes the failure to acknowledge that the world’s most numerous people listen to this form of music.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of watching TV?

Advantages:

Modern TV offers viewers several programs on different channels. In addition to regular newscasts you can see plays and films, operas and ballets and watch all kinds of contests, quizzes and sporting events. You can also get a lot of useful information of the educational channels. A good serial can keep the whole family in front of the TV for days, and we spend hours and hours watching our favorite football and hockey term in an important international event.

Disadvantages:

TV is a very expensive medium and many countries don’t have the technology and the money to make their own television programs. The result is that most countries are dependent on TV of Britain and America. It is easier and cheaper to buy foreign products mainly soap operas. So, a lot of people feel that TV is a danger to local cultures in some countries.

How do people usually answer the question: “What are you going to do tonight?” or “What are you going to do at the weekend?” In other words how do people spend their free time. Some 20 or 30 years ago the usual answers used to be “We are going to the theatre” or “We are going to the party” or “We are having some friends round”. Now you are very often to hear “We

are going to stay at home and watch the television”.

A first-rate color TV set has become an ordinary thing in the household today and a video cassette recorder is quickly becoming one. TV most definitely plays a very important part in people's life, but is this a good thing or a bad one? Don't we go out less often, then we used to? Don't we read less?

Do you think it is necessary to hold music courses in schools?

Music is a very personal subject, one in which the participant engages in a wholesome, elevating, emotional experience. Learning gained through music participation in school groups is not forgotten in latter life, and will be of the utmost value to the individual throughout his life.

Music is the strongest medium for personal social adjustment. Children singing or playing music together in groups, adjust quickly to their environment. Music is the greatest aid in helping children to learn to work together through their unified group participation. They quickly enjoy the feeling of oneness—of being accepted—of belonging. Music, more than any other subject, promotes teamwork, cooperation, self-discipline, respect for one another and the love of beauty.

If man is the highest product of civilization, then civilization cannot be judged by what man produces, but rather, by the manner of man produced. What gains man then from his inventions and clever devices, even atomic energy, and all modern ingenuity, come the nearest, outside of religion itself, to help man better understand himself, to respect his neighbors, and to learn to work together. It builds within the individual a real understanding of the true meaning of intimate and personal form of communication man has with others.

Therefore, to me, it is unthinkable for anyone to class these subjects in the public school curriculum as frill subjects. Indeed, in view of the above, they become very important. If man does not learn how to work, get along and understand his fellow man, all the techniques and scientific knowledge that he has at his command will be used by him to destroy himself.

What do you think is the function of music?

I believe that music is one of the most popular things in the world. It is something that reflects the thoughts and interest of a certain age group or a generation. It is the product of a certain age, but it also has something universal, something that belongs to all human beings. People like music for some direct reasons:

First, for entertainment. Beautiful and sweet music can make people happy and relaxed. For instance, when I feel depressed, listening to my favorite songs can help to cheer me up. In China or Thailand, music could even be used to cure some illnesses.

Second, for expressing feelings. Love is an endless topic in most of music. It is a good example that to sing a song or play a piece of music will be a best way to show one's real feelings.

Third, music can act as a mirror of traditional culture of a nation. In China, some old famous music is very popular throughout the world, which provides an access to the Chinese mysterious cultures for foreigners.

In a word, music makes life interesting and colorful.

What do you think has made western fast food so popular in China?

Started at a late period, modern fast food was introduced into China by KFC in April 1987 with the first chain fast food restaurant set up in Beijing. In recent years, western fast food industry has been growing at an astonishing speed.

Nowadays, China's fast food industry is still in the imitating, learning and accumulating period and has not formed its own system and scale yet. However, the supply and demand market of fast food industry has been initially established, especially in large and medium-sized cities, tourism cities and areas that are fairly advanced in economic development. Now, fast food has already become one of the first choices for people engaged with commercial affairs, sightseeing or other outdoor activities, and for students. It is estimated that by the beginning of the 21st century, China's fast food industry will have a turnover of RMB200 billion, becoming the most attractive and biggest profit-making unit in both the commodity and labor markets of China, hence creating new platform and steps for further development of the industry.

The target consumer groups of Western-style fast food are youngsters and their families. For youngsters under age 16, it is more often that their parents or other senior relatives accompany them to the Western-style fast food restaurants. For young office workers, they are mostly fashion advocates and prefer western fast food to Chinese fast food.

With the development of holiday economy in China, there have emerged many commercial and sightseeing tourists, offering a good chance for operating fast food restaurants at transportation centers and sightseeing spots. Western fast food companies are mostly chain-restaurant ones. In fact, companies that operate in chain are mostly large comparably in scale with standard business management and are modern industrialized and standardized ones that mainly or even totally operate mechanically.

What are the differences in Chinese eating habits and Western eating habits?

The main difference between Chinese and Western eating habits is that unlike the West, where everyone has their own plate of food, in China the dishes are placed on the table and everybody shares. If you are being treated by a Chinese host, you will be prepared for a ton of food. Chinese are very proud of their culture of food and will do their best to give you a taste of many different types of cuisine. Among friends, they will just order enough for the people there. If they are taking somebody out for dinner and the relationship is polite to semi-polite, then they will usually order one more dish than the number of guests (e.g. four people, five

dishes). If it is a business dinner or a very formal occasion, there is likely to be a huge amount of food that will be impossible to finish.

A typical meal starts with some cold dishes, like boiled peanuts and smashed cucumber with garlic. These are followed by the main courses, hot meat and vegetable dishes. Finally soup is brought out, which is followed by the starchy “staple” food, which is usually rice or noodles or sometimes dumplings. Many Chinese eat rice (or noodles or whatever) last, but if you like to have your rice together with other dishes, you should say so early.

One thing to be aware of is that when eating with a Chinese host, you may find that the person is using his/her chopsticks to put food in your bowl or plate. This is a sign of politeness. The appropriate thing to do would be to eat the whatever-it-is and say how yummy it is. If you feel uncomfortable with this, you can just say a polite thank you and leave the food there, and maybe cover it up with a little rice when he/she is not looking. There is a certain amount of leniency involved when dealing with Westerners, so you won't be chastised.

A lot of medical experiments are done in animals. What do you think of it?

Medical researchers need to understand health problems before they can develop ways to treat them. Some diseases and health problems involve processes that can only be studied in a living organism. Animals are necessary to medical research when it is impractical or unethical to use humans.

Animals make good research subjects for a variety of reasons. Animals are biologically similar to humans. They are susceptible to many of the same health problems, and they have short life-cycles so they can easily be studied throughout their whole life-span or across several generations. In addition, scientists can easily control the environment around the animal (diet, temperature, lighting, etc.), which would be difficult to do with people. However, the most important reason why animals are used is that it would be wrong to deliberately expose human beings to health risks in order to observe the course of a disease.

A few experiments do involve painful procedures because pain is being studied or drugs would interfere with the research. In such cases, scientists are morally and legally obligated to ensure that the procedures are necessary.

Those who work with research animals—scientists, veterinarians, and animal care technicians should care about the animals. They should recognize that using animals in research is a privilege that carries with it the responsibility to treat those animals humanely. Furthermore, pain and distress can literally change how the body functions, so it is also in the best interest of science to provide good animal care.

How should we protect animals?

Generally, such measures could be taken to protect animals:

The government should enact and enforce the laws of animal protection. Catching and killing rare species is prohibited severely. Heavy fine and even imprisonment is the only solution to the problem.

The government should set up large-scale national zoos and some reserves for wild animals, where all the native species of animals can live freely and be protected against harm.

People should be educated to understand the importance of animal conservation. And measures could be taken to shift those hunters to other jobs.

What do you think of the fact that more and more Chinese people have begun to celebrate some foreign festivals?

As cultural exchanges expand between China and the West, it appears that the Chinese are more eager for foreign festivals rather than their own and traditional Chinese festivals.

Some people propose to give more holidays at some Chinese traditional festivals each year to remind the younger generation at home and abroad of the traditions of China. They think this could not only help traditional Chinese culture to prosper, but enhance patriotism and a love for the homeland among Chinese offspring.

An investigation shows that youngsters love foreign festivals because of the joy and pleasure in them. As to the difference between foreign festivals and traditional festivals in China, some think that Chinese festivals rest on material activities of eating and clothing, while foreign ones pay much attention to communication of feelings and ideas. Meanwhile, others think they become too tired during traditional festivals but feel free and easy going during foreign festivals.

With social development, festival experience changes. Some are weakened; some are strengthened; while others are endowed with new meanings or connotations. This is the natural process of cultural selection. Therefore, it is unnecessary to feel panic about the bustle of foreign festivals. This is only an aspect of world culture integration.

As China becomes better at understanding the culture and society of foreign countries, it is only natural for the Chinese to accept them.

► 雅思口语考试Part 3社会类素材库:

How do people benefit from local parks and open places?

Playgrounds and sports field offer places where children and adults can play organized sports and informal games, from frisbee tossing to kite flying.

Outdoor concerts are held in community parks.

People jog, bike, walk, roller blade and take leisurely strolls on trails and path systems.

People visit the more natural settings to photograph and paint nature, watch birds, observe plants and enjoy quiet contemplation.

Open space floodways safely channel water away from homes and businesses.

Wetlands, natural areas and vegetated parks help filter pollutants from the air and water and reduce noise pollution.

Parks and open spaces contribute to a positive community image, attracting visitors.

Open space has a positive effect on property values because people consider proximity to parks, open spaces and natural areas important in locating or purchasing a home or business.

A connected system of parks and open spaces enhances opportunities for citizens to walk and bicycle to work, leading to a healthier citizenry and providing viable habitat for wildlife.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of living in cities and living in the countryside?

Living in cities:

Living in a city has both advantages and disadvantages. On the plus side, it is often easier to find work, and there is usually choice of public transport, so you don't need to own a car. Also, there are a lot of interesting things to do and places to see. For example, you can eat in good restaurants, visit museums, and go to the theatre and concerts. What is more, when you want to relax, you can usually find a park where you can feed the ducks or just sit on a park bench and read a book. All in all, city life is full of bustle and variety and you need never feel bored.

However, for every plus there is a minus. For one thing, you might have a job, but unless it is very well-paid, you will not be able to afford many of the things that there are to do, because living in the city is often very expensive. It is particularly difficult to find good, cheap accommodation. What is more, public transport is sometimes crowded and dirty, particularly in rush hour, and even the parks can become crowded, especially on Sundays when it seems that every city dweller is looking for some open space and green grass. Last of all, despite all the crowds, it is still possible to feel very lonely in the city.

City life can be particularly appealing to many young people, who like the excitement of the city and don't mind the noise and pollution. However, many people, when they get older, and particularly when they have young children, often prefer the peace and fresh air of the countryside.

Living in the countryside:

In the countryside there are not so many pupils in schools and groups are smaller, so you

are able to work more in peace than in a city. On the other hand, if you like to have certain hobbies in addition to school, you can't do it here, depending on the hobby, of course, for instance if you are keen on judo, karate etc.

In the best case your family may own a lake and a forest of their own in the countryside. Your home may have the same advantages as a summer cottage. Nature's near, and it is much cleaner than in cities because there are not so many cars and factories. The worst threat to nature in the countryside is fertilizers which farmers use in their fields.

You can easily stop and think about the world here because there's much less traffic than in a city. You can have a big house and a big yard around your house. Swimming is really easy—lakes are near you. There's less concrete and asphalt here and the air you breathe here is fresher than in cities. You can keep pets, and your neighbors don't complain as easily as in a city.

There are also problems. When you move into the country, you may be able to buy a house easily, but finding a job is more difficult. It may be the biggest problem here, and the most likely reason for depopulation of the countryside. There are not many shops, and that also drives people away. And distances are long. In the villages everyone knows each other and gossips travel really fast.

It is safer to live and to move around in the countryside. There is less violence here because there are fewer people here. But, of course, the neighborhood of big cities makes villages less safe all the time. Drugs are the worst threat to the safety of small villages.

Do you think athletes deserve high salaries? / Are athletes getting paid too much? Why?

In the past few decades, athlete salaries have escalated like that of a superb stock equity. Athletes are taking full advantage of their position, causing the average man to wonder how high will they go.

In today's society when people talk about millionaires they usually think of actors, musicians, inventors, CEOs of big companies, and probably the most common, athletes. Professional athletes are paid enormous amounts of money because they are the best in the world at what they do. I believe that most professional athletes are paid too high to simply do what they love, however professional golfers are not paid enough. All athletes, whether they play football, baseball, tennis, or golf, are finely tuned athletic machines. They all put much time and energy into the things they love. Most spend their whole lives preparing so they can get to where they are today.

Maybe they are, but I don't really believe that athletes are over paid. People don't understand how the lifestyle of a professional athlete really is or who would get the money we spend if the athlete's didn't get it. They just see those astronomical numbers and think that it is unfair that us working class people don't make that amount of money. Pro athletes are some of the most dedicated, hardest working people in world. They don't just play during their season,

they have to train year round or they will lose their job. The psychological stress placed upon athletes is overwhelming. They are constantly worrying about their bodies, because if they get hurt, their career may be over. They get paid to compete, that in itself is stressful. It is a business, just like lawyers, salesmen, and companies. You just don't hear about the kind of money those people make. Here's how it works: Fans pay to watch the game. Numerous companies pay the team to endorse various products. Clothing and apparel companies pay the team to make jerseys, shirts, hats, etc. Different broadcasting corporations pay the team to cover and air the game. All of this money goes to the owner of the particular team. The owners, in turn, then pay their players their salaries. The truth of the matter is that the owners actually make the most money, and only distribute a small portion of it to their hard working employees. Athlete's salaries must stay high to keep the level of competition where it is, and keep striving to get better.

Why do many countries apply to host great sport events?

The hosting of international sport events offers the potential to bring direct and significant benefits across a broad range of government priorities and can act as a catalyst for the achievement of other objectives. Athletes, coaches, officials and volunteers benefit from preparation programs, competitions, programming and facility legacies. Sport organizations also benefit from increased exposure and influence, and experience increased participation in the sport.

Economic benefits include job creation, particularly in the small and medium-sized business sector, regional development, increased tourism, increased exports, enhanced infrastructure and increased tax revenue.

Social benefits range from unique working experiences including training and youth participation, to volunteer promotion and increased emphasis on fitness and health.

Hosting also offers a forum to celebrate athletic, artistic and cultural excellence and provide people with the opportunity to contribute to the expression of identity.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of online shopping?

Advantages:

Availability: Online shopping is available all the time—the stores never close. People can shop 24 hours a day and seven days a week.

Choice: The selection of consumer goods may be even greater than what is found in a traditional store.

Research and Comparison: People can research the product they are interested in by checking out several e-commerce web sites. They can compare shops for features, quality and price by comparing what different vendors offer. They can buy the items on-line or use their research findings to buy locally.

Effective Time and Energy Use: Instead of using time and gasoline driving to different stores to compare shops, people can do it online.

Disadvantages:

Over-choice: There are so many choices online that confusion results. It then becomes harder, not easier, to make a decision.

Inefficient Time Use: As a computer user, you can waste a lot of time online looking for the products you want. If you don't use efficient search strategies or if the items you are searching for come from web sites that are hard to find, much time can be lost searching with little success.

Extra Costs: In making price comparisons, it is important to determine what the final and total cost of the item will be. Carefully check out the cost of shipping and handling as well as sales taxes. The total amount you will pay to buy online may be more than in a local store—even if the price of the product is less.

Privacy and Security Concerns: Shopping online can be safe if the site you are buying from is a secure site. Consumers need to know how to evaluate the security of e-commerce web sites before buying something online.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of big supermarkets?

Advantages:

It is designed in such a way that the shoppers have to go a certain route from the entrance to the cash point near exit. The customer is guided past all the most popular product display and thereby encouraged to buy items he would have forgotten to buy. People don't have to carry things but just take a trolley.

It is a very convenient way of shopping because people can choose the products they want from a large range and have the possibility to get to know new products. They are served in a very polite way and no one makes hurry because other shoppers are waiting behind. Supermarkets can be called "the all in one shop" because they offer products of every kind. There are departments specializing in food for people and pets, clothes, tools, books and magazines, electronic equipment, souvenirs and many others. It is not only high-quality and whole assortment which attract people but also its lighting of high intensity and its clean and hygienic atmosphere with the possibility to do all the shopping in one store.

People can wheel your trolley to their car, load their stuff in to the car boot and leave the basket or trolley nearby to be collected by the store attendant. In this way shopping becomes a pleasure instead of a chore. Supermarkets are convenient because they are self-service and apart from goods we can find there a restaurant, a cafe, and a special place for kids to play while their mothers are shopping. There is also a possibility to pay by check or a credit card

and vouchers available.

Disadvantages:

One the other hand shopping in supermarkets can be annoying for there is a big choice which can cause confusion. People often buy unnecessary things because they see them to have a good price and you buy things that you did not plan to buy earlier. This is called impulse buying. Attractive packing and displays persuade people to buy things they do not actually need. For many of us the major disadvantage of shopping in supermarkets is that it is time consuming and it takes a while to get there and back. Big stores are also quite dangerous for all small shops owned by private people. And those shops may be the only source of living of them.

What do you think of school uniforms?

About this question, generally, people hold different opinions. Personally, I think it is good in some way. Some people say that it is fine to give children freedom regarding what they wear, but at the same time, it creates problems. For example, it is reported that in the schools of some foreign countries, some children are teased by others because they wear old and shabby clothes, which virtually causes some negative effects in their mind. Another concern is that we emphasize harmony and unity among students, so it is helpful in cultivating their awareness of this through practicing uniforms in schools.

What are the advantages and disadvantages of advertising?

Advantages:

Advertising may lead to increased sales, which leads to mass production and therefore cheaper prices.

Advertising informs the consumer of the various products on the market, which leads to a better choice.

It leads to greater competition and therefore better quality and lower prices.

Lower prices of media in which advertisements appear for example magazines, newspapers, etc.

Improves standard of living, because consumer goods become more affordable.

Disadvantages:

Advertising is expensive and if it fails to increase sales, prices will increase.

Consumers are tempted to purchase goods and services which they do not really need.

Advertising can be unethical. Accused by some of promoting sexism and greed.

Pollution. Billboards can for example deface natural features. Leaflets may be thrown away when handed out in public, which adds to pollution.

Do you think the private lives of public figures / celebrities should be open to press scrutiny?

Advantages:

The people have a right to know about those in power over them. Their salaries are paid for by the people (whether through taxes, in the case of politicians and civil servants, or by revenue generated by films, CDs, TV, etc., in the case of celebrities). The decisions of public political figures affect many aspects of people's lives; in exchange the people have the right to make informed judgments about the kind of leaders they have. Any attempt to restrict what may be reported about public figures in the press could easily become a conspiracy to keep voters in the dark and to manipulate them.

No clear dividing line can be drawn between public and private behavior—drawing up rules will be arbitrary and will exclude at least some corrupt or dishonest behaviors of bearing.

Public figures seek this status knowing that it will bring attention to their private lives—pop stars, footballers, etc. Constant scrutiny is the price of fame. Many celebrities actively seek media exposure in order to advance their careers, revealing many aspects of their personal lives; once success has been brought in such a fashion it is hypocritical to complain of “press intrusion” into those few aspects the star would prefer to remain hidden.

Disadvantages:

The “public interest” is not the same thing as what the public is interested in. There will always be a fascination in learning intimate details about the lives of the powerful and famous, but this should not be a reason to deny public figures the right to privacy that the rest of us enjoy. Nor should public figures be held to higher standards of personal behavior than the rest of society by a sensationalist press seeking only to sell newspapers. If newspapers were forced to focus upon the policies and public actions of politicians, rather than their personal foibles, democracy would be better served.

Many public figures achieve celebrity status largely by mistake; it is a by-product of their pursuit of success in their particular field. For example, most professional footballers wanted when young simply to become the best player they could be, at the highest level they could reach.

How do you think weather affects us?

Weather affects people in all ways. Bad weather like gale, heavy rain, and storm always makes people's daily activities difficult. People won't like to go shopping on a rainy day. They hate going around with a wet umbrella squeezing in and out of the vehicles.

It has always been an intriguing subject that weather can affect our mood. One would think so, just to make an educated guess, especially if it has happened to you. Like when the days are extremely hot, and we feel irritated or moody for no apparent reason. And what about

when it is cold or rainy and gloomy and we feel sad, melancholy, even depressed, but we can't quite put your finger on it.

There are studies that link weather with long periods of high temperatures to increase in crime. It is believed that people get irritable and hostile when it is extremely hot. Several law enforcement agencies have statistics that shows the correlation of the two.

We can judge for ourselves—if we have ever been happy and energetic on a bright sunny day, or sad and depressed or lack of energy on winter days or rainy days, or if we have been irritable on an extremely hot day, I think, the weather does have some physical, however minimal, and / or psychological affect on our mood.

How does climate affect the style of buildings?

The buildings we live and work in could be very different in the future if our climate does change as predicted. Changes in the weather, such as rainfall, wind and the frequency of storms will affect the way our homes and offices are designed and constructed.

The kind of differences we are likely to need can be seen by comparing homes in different regions. The buildings in windy regions are built with this in mind and are able to stand up to more severe weather.

A lot of researches will go into building materials before they are used in the construction process, to see whether they will stand up to the job in hand, to see if they can withstand the pressures of the weather in this country, such as roof tiles, etc.. The overlap and the pitch (the slope) of the tiles will have to be different measurements if weather conditions change as predicted.

In rainy regions, buildings and roofs are designed to shed water as quickly as possible. Maybe to avoid more flooding, it would be best if buildings retain water, perhaps by an increase in roof gardens which would absorb some of the precipitation.

第4节 雅思口语考试Part 3、大黄金原则

黄金原则1:

回答考官问题时，一定要把答案讲透，要多用理由和例子。

黄金原则2:

运用雅思写作的方法，通过观点表达和分类阐述方法来回答问题。

黄金原则3:

对于自己不熟悉的话题要用生活化的例子去解释，Part 3也要讲究雅思生活化。

黄金原则4:

连接词的运用要自然有效，注重递进，因果和转折三方面的有意识表达。

黄金原则5:

充分运用自己准备的素材库，教育、文化、科技和社会四大素材库要灵活使用。

黄金原则6:

回答问题不能过于抽象，不能过于深入，否则考官会就考生回答的继续发问。

黄金原则7:

绝对不要出现冷场情况，否则分数会大幅下降。没有idea的时候要联系自己生活中的例子来举例说明，也就是充分实践黄金原则1和3。

黄金原则8:

保持一种和考官交流的感觉，充分运用语调和节奏，创造一种自然流畅的交流氛围。这样一来，即使语言上有缺陷，也能够充分交流，取得高分。